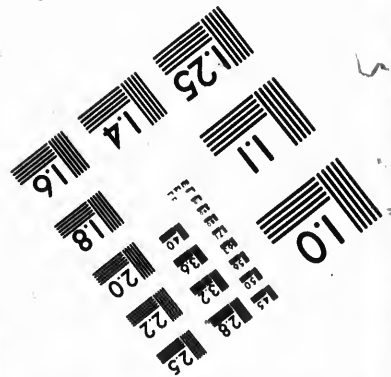
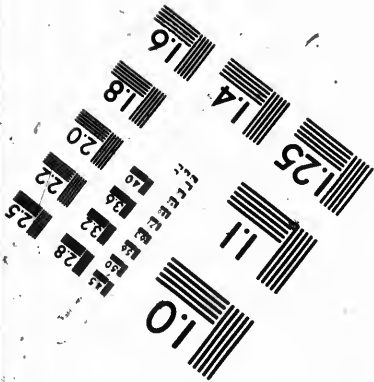
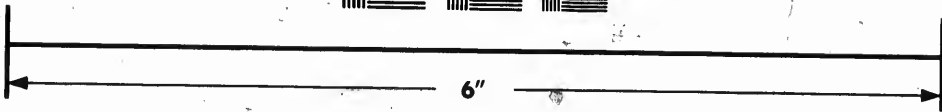
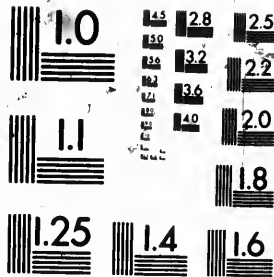


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10
11

© 1991

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

Additional comments: /
Commentaires supplémentaires:

Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur

Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

Pages detached/
Pages détachées

Showthrough/
Transparence

Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

Continuous pagination/
Pagination continue

Includes index(es)/
Comprend un (des) index

Title on header taken from: /
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

Title page of issue/
Page de titre de la livraison

Caption of issue/
Titre de départ de la livraison

Masthead/
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy fil
to the gene

Socié
du S

The images
possible cor
of the origin
filming cont

Original cop
beginning w
the last pag
sion, or the
other origin
first page w
sion, and en
or illustrated

The last rec
shall contain
TINUED"), o
whichever a

Maps, plates
different red
entirely inclu
beginning in
right and top
required. The
method:

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

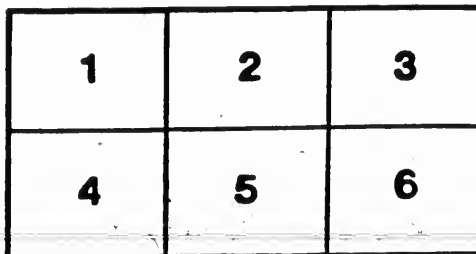
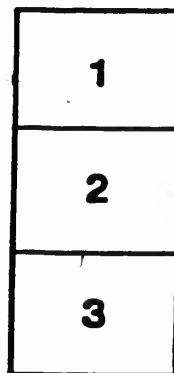
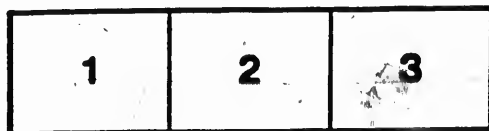
Société du Musée
du Séminaire de Québec

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Société du Musée
du Séminaire de Québec

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

146

THE
METROPOLITAN
ENGLISH
GRAMMAR.

BY
WILLIAM LENNIE.

MONTREAL:
D. & J. SADLIER & CO.
1886



**Bibliothèque,
Le Séminaire de Québec,
3, rue de l'Université,
Québec 4, QUE.**

A. D. de B.



3

EM

THE

COPI

WITH T

D.

Handwritten marks at the bottom right corner.

366

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

COMPRISING
THE SUBSTANCE OF ALL THE MOST APPROVED ENGLISH GRAMMARS
EXTANT, BRIEFLY DEFINED, AND NEATLY ARRANGED;

WITH
COPIOUS EXERCISES IN PARSING AND SYNTAX.

BY WILLIAM LENNIE,
LATE TEACHER OF ENGLISH, EDINBURGH.

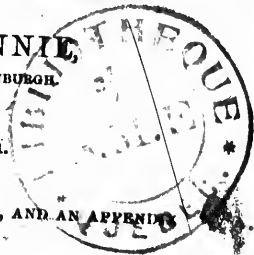
Eighth Edition.

WITH THE AUTHOR'S LATEST IMPROVEMENTS, AND AN APPENDIX
IN WHICH

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES

IS FULLY TREATED.

MONTREAL:
D. AND J. SADLER AND CO.
1886.



ADVERTISEMENT.

THE present Edition of Lennie's Grammar has been carefully revised, and a few alterations have been made for the purpose of keeping the work in conformity with the progress of grammatical knowledge.

ENTERED according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six, by JAMES A. SADLIER, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

It is pr
every te
of his ow
present a
arranger
to any o
plain the
as possib
have bee
Orthog
with a v
have ma
study of
On Ety
in the ti
children,
their book
ing fixed
addresses
hend his
pursuance
thrown in
Grammar
teacher, h
ing recour
remarkabl
page, to wh
The des
very ellipt
perspicuou
remarks w
Grammar,
studiously
spared, to
The Que
for themse
methods, v
answer, wi
Syntax i
ernment ;
in general

PREFACE.

It is probable, that the original design and principal motive of every teacher, in publishing a School-Book, is the improvement of his own pupils. Such, at least, was the immediate object of the present compilation; which, for brevity of expression, neatness of arrangement, and comprehensiveness of plan, is, perhaps, superior to any other book of the kind. "My chief end has been to explain the general principles of Grammar as clearly and intelligibly as possible. In the definitions, therefore, easiness and perspicuity have been sometimes preferred to logical exactness."

Orthography is mentioned rather for the sake of order than with a view to instruction; for the pupil may be supposed to have mastered its practical details before he commences the study of Grammar.

On Etymology I have left much to be remarked by the teacher, in the time of teaching. My reason for doing this is, that children, when by themselves, labour more to have the words of their book imprinted on their memories, than to have the meaning fixed in their minds; but, on the contrary, when the teacher addresses them *viva voce*, they naturally strive rather to comprehend his meaning, than to remember his exact expressions. In pursuance of this idea, the first part of this little volume has been thrown into a form more resembling Heads of Lectures on Grammar than a complete elucidation of the subject. That the teacher, however, may not be always under the necessity of having recourse to his memory to supply the deficiencies, the most remarkable Observations have been subjoined at the bottom of the page, to which the pupils themselves may occasionally be referred.

The desire of being concise has frequently induced me to use very elliptical expressions; but I trust they are all sufficiently perspicuous. I may also add, that many additional and critical remarks which might have, with propriety, been inserted in the Grammar, have been inserted rather in the Key; for I have studiously withheld everything from the Grammar that could be spared, to keep it low-priced for the general good.

The Questions on Etymology, at pages 174 and 175 will speak for themselves: they unite the advantages of both the usual methods, viz. that of plain narration, and that of question and answer, without the inconvenience of either.

Syntax is commonly divided into two parts, Concord and Government; and the rules respecting the former, grammarians in general have placed before those which relate to the latter.

I have not, however, attended to this division, because I deem it of little importance; but have placed those rules first which are either more easily understood, or which occur more frequently. In arranging a number of rules, it is difficult to please every reader. I have frequently been unable to satisfy myself; and therefore cannot expect that the arrangement which I have at last adopted will give universal satisfaction. Whatever order be preferred, the one rule must necessarily precede the other; and since they are all to be learned, it signifies little whether the rules of concord precede those of government, or whether they be mixed, provided no anticipations be made which may embarrass the learner.

In connexion with the Rules of Syntax, I have introduced "Exercises to be corrected" as well as "Exercises to be parsed and construed;" and in the case of the former I have generally compressed into a single page as many faulty expressions as some of my predecessors have done into two pages of a larger size. Hence, though the book seems to contain but few exercises on bad grammar, it really contains so many that a separate volume of exercises is quite unnecessary.

Whatever defects were found in the former editions in the time of teaching have been carefully supplied.

On Etymology, Syntax, Punctuation, and Prosody, there is scarcely a Rule or Observation in the largest grammar in print that is not to be found in this; besides, the Rules and Definitions, in general, are so very short and pointed, that, compared with those in most other grammars, they may be said to be *hit off* rather than *made*. Every page is independent, and though quite full, not crowded, but wears an air of neatness and ease invitingly sweet,—a circumstance not unimportant. But, notwithstanding these properties, and others that might be mentioned, I am far from being so vain as to suppose that this compilation is altogether free from inaccuracies or defects; much less do I presume that it will obtain the approbation of every one who may choose to peruse it; for, to use the words of Dr. Johnson, "He that has much to do will do something wrong, and of that wrong must suffer the consequences; and if it were possible that he should always act rightly, yet when such numbers are to judge of his conduct, the bad will censure and obstruct him by malevolence, and the good sometimes by mistake."

☞ Those pupils that are capable of writing, should be requested to write the plural of nouns, &c., either at home or at school. The Exercises on Syntax should be written in their corrected state with a stroke drawn under the word corrected.

☞ K. means Key; the figures refer to the No. of the Key, not the page

QRTH
ETYM
N

AI

PR

VE

AD

PR

COM

INT

PARSIN

EXP

SYNTA

Con

Pro

Am

Tau

Imp

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ORTHOGRAPHY,	5
ETYMOLOGY,	7
NOUNS,	7
Number,	8
Gender,	11
Case,	13
ADJECTIVES,	14
Comparison,	15
PRONOUNS,	17
Personal Pronouns,	17
Relative Pronouns,	18
Adjective Pronouns,	19
VERBS,	21
Moods,	22
Tenses,	22
Irregular Verbs,	43
ADVERBS,	50
PREPOSITIONS,	52
CONJUNCTIONS,	53
INTERJECTIONS,	54
PARSING,	55
Explanation of some Terms used in the Grammar,	80
SYNTAX,	81
Construction,	120
Promiscuous Exercises on the Rules of Syntax,	121
Ambiguity,	138
Tautology,	139
Improper Expressions,	140

because I deem it
 rules first which are
 more frequently
 it to please every
 satisfy myself; and
 which I have at last
 ever order be pre-
 e other; and since
 ar the rules of con-
 ey be mixed, pro-
 arrass the learner.
 I have introduced
 oises to be parsed
 I have generally
 xpressions as some
 of a larger size.
 few exercises on
 e separate volume

ditions in the time

Prosody, there is
 rammar in print
 Rules and Defini-
 l, that, compared
 e said to be *his off*
 ent, and though
 neatness and ease
 rtant. But, not-
 t might be men-
 e that this com-
 aects; much less
 ion of every one
 rds of Dr. John-
 ng wrong, and of
 f it were possible
 h numbers are to
 obstruct him by
 e."

ould be requested to
 ol. The Exercises
 th a stroke drawn

Key, not the page

	PAGE
SYNTAX—continued.	
Miscellaneous Observations,	143
Use of Capitals,	155
Directions for Superscriptions and Forms of Address,	156
Punctuation,	159
Abbreviations,	166
PROSODY,	167
Versification,	167
Iambic Measure,	168
Trochaic Measure,	169
Anapaestic Measure,	170
FIGURES OF SPEECH,	171
FRENCH PHRASES,	176
LATIN PHRASES,	178
ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES,	181
THE SIMPLE SENTENCE,	182
<i>The Parts of the Subject,—</i>	
The Nominative,	184
The Attribute,	185
<i>The Parts of the Predicate,—</i>	
The Verb,	187
The Complement,	187
The Adverbial,	189
Kinds of Phrases,	193
THE COMPLEX SENTENCE,	196
The Adjective Clause,	197
The Noun Clause,	200
The Adverbial Clause,	202
THE COMPOUND SENTENCE,	211
Contracted Sentences,	211
QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION,	217

Two or m
Two nou
Noun of
One nou
Of a cla
Several n
Singular
A singul
A noun a

Pronoun
Each, eve
That and
Relative
Relative
Relative
cedents
Rel. shoul
Who after
When a
words o
Of which

A verb ag
An active
Neuter ver
Active ver
One verb
The infinit
Verbs rela
The verb &

Participle
A possessi
present p
A noun bef
Past Par. is

INDEX TO THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

143

155

orms of

156

159

166

167

167

168

169

170

171

176

178

181

182

184

185

187

187

189

193

196

197

200

202

211

211

217

Nouns.

Page

Two or more nouns in the sing., 85

Two nouns disjoined, &c., 1b.

Noun of multitude, 89

One noun governs another, 88

Of a clause between them, 111

Several nouns in the possessive,* 88

Singular nouns of diff. persons, 98

A singular and a plural noun, 99

A noun and its pron. improper, 100

Pronouns.

Pronouns agree in gender, &c., 95

Each, every, either, agree, &c., 108

That and this, former, latter,* 109

Relative agrees with its antec., 96

Relative that and which,* 1b.

Relative preceded by two ante-

cedents of different persons, 97

Rel. should be placed next ant., † 1b.

Who after than,* - - - 107

When a pronoun refers to two

words of different persons, † 99

Of whichever, &c.,* - - - 111

Verb.

A verb agrees with its nom., 82

An active verb governs, - - 83

N neuter verbs do not gov. an ob., ‡ 1b.

Active verbs admit of no prep., || 1b.

One verb governs another, 87

The infinitive is used as a nom., 101

Verbs related in point of time, 110

The verb to be has the same case, 90

Participle.

Participle used as a noun, 93

A possessive pronoun before the

present participle, † - - 1b.

A noun before the present par., † 1b.

Past Par. is used after have & be, 94

Adverbs.

Page

Of the position of adverbs, 104

Adjectives not used as adverbs, 105

Of hence, thence, there, &c.* 1b.

Double comparatives improper, 102

Two negatives improper, - 103

The comp. degree requires than, 106

Prepositions.

Prepositions govern objective, 84

— sometimes a clause, 1b.

— should be placed before

the relative,* - - - 1b.

Diff. preps. with the same noun, † 1b.

To, at, in, before names of places, 112

Words requiring appropriate

prepositions, - - - 113

Conjunctions.

Conjunctions couple like moods, 86

— require subjunctive mood, 91

Lest and that,* - - - 1b.

If, with but following, † - - 1b.

Conjunctions in pairs, - - - 92

— than and as, - - - 107

Various Things.

Interjections, † - - - 112

General Rule, - - - 116

Use of the articles, - - - 117

Ellipsis is frequently admitted, 118

— improper, - - - 119

Construction, - - - 120

Promiscuous exer. on Syntax, 121

Miscellaneous observations, 143

When to use capitals, - - - 155

Prosody, - - - 167

Of Versification, - - - 1b.

Figures of Speech, - - - 171

French and Latin Phrases, 176

Questions for Examination, 217

E

ENGL
writin

It i
raphy

ORTHO

THE

Let

A V

a full

A C

distinc

The

w and

The

r, p, q

W a

word o

are vov

A D

ou in o

A *pr*

Vowels

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English Language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of *Letters*, *Syllables*, and *the spelling of Words*.

THERE are *twenty-six* letters in English.

Letters are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

A *Vowel* is a letter, the *name* of which makes a *full open* sound.

A *Consonant* is a letter that has a sound *less distinct than* that of a vowel.

The *Vowels* are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*.

The *Consonants* are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z*.

W and *y* are consonants when they begin a word or syllable; in every other situation they are vowels.

A *Diphthong* is the union of two vowels; as, *ou* in *out*.

A *proper Diphthong* is one in which *both* the *Vowels* are sounded; as, *oy* in *boy*.

An *improper* Diphthong is one in which only one of the two vowels is sounded; as, *o* in *boat*.

A *Triphthong* is the union of three vowels; as, *eau* in *beauty*.

A *Syllable* is as much of a word as can be sounded at once; as, *gram* in *grammar*.

A *Monosyllable* is a word of *one* syllable; as, *house*.

A *Dissyllable* is a word of *two* syllables; as, *household*.

A *Trisyllable* is a word of *three* syllables; as, *householder*.

A *Polysyllable* is a word of *many* syllables.

Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

EXERCISES ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

Tell the Vowels in

Ball, cellar, dine, folly, home, James, kitchen, lambkin, mulberry, popgun.

Tell whether w and y are Vowels or Consonants in

Awry, beware, blowy, downy, fowl, grayling, hay, jewry, lawfully, wayward, witty, yearly.

Tell which are proper and which improper Diphthongs in

Boil, cook, death, faith, gown, hawk, loud, mean, pour, queen, roar, toy.

Tell how many Syllables are in the following words:—

Aaron, barbarian, circular, diamond, extraordinary, firefly, goatherd, heavenward, Lad-dicea, latitudinarian, noteworthy, Utopia.

OBSERVATIONS.

In every syllable there must be at least one vowel.
Any vowel except *w* can make a syllable by itself.

ETYM
their
TH
Adjec
Conju

A M
place,
The
Dommu
Prop
only;
Com
as, boy

Tell wi

The
by his
he riv
nounta
alled t
betwee
ever s
Noun

* Modern
speech,
Collective
Abstract
ances; as
Verbal or
Proper n
The Co
ight Henry
stars we v
silver and

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of Words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

THERE are eight* parts of Speech;—Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

Of NOUNS.

A Noun is the name of any person, animal, place, or thing; as, *John, horse, London, book.*

There are two kinds of Nouns, *Proper* and *Common*.

Proper Nouns denote the names of individuals only; as, *James, Edinburgh, Ben Lomond.*

Common Nouns denote a whole kind or class; as, *boy, city, mountain.*

EXERCISES ON NOUNS.

Tell which of the following words are Nouns, and whether the nouns are *Proper* or *Common*:—

The boys are at school. John has been sent by his father to London. Stirling is a town on the river Forth. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe. My cousin has a ship called the Rover; it carries passengers and goods between Liverpool and New York. The sun ever sets on the empire of Queen Victoria.

Nouns are varied by Number, Gender, and Case.

OBSERVATIONS.

* Modern grammarians no longer consider the *Article* a separate part of speech, but regard it as an *Adjective*.

Collective nouns are nouns that signify many; as, *Multitude, crowd.*

Abstract nouns are the names of qualities abstracted from their substances; as, *wisdom, wickedness.*

Verbal or *participial* nouns are nouns derived from verbs; as, *Reading.*

Proper nouns have the plural only when they refer to a race or family;

as, *The Campbells*; or to several persons of the same name; as, *The eight Henrys*; the two *Miss Browns*; the *Miss Roys*; but in addressing letters we write *Misses Brown*; *Misses Roy*; *Messrs* (for *Messieurs*, Fr.)

Silver and Boyd.

Of NUMBER.

Nouns have *two numbers*; the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The singular denotes *one*, the plural *more than one*.

The plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, Book, books.

To this general rule there are many exceptions:—

1. Nouns in *ss*, *sh*, *ch* soft, *x*, and in *i* and *o* preceded by a consonant, form the plural by adding *es*; as, Miss, misses; brush, brushes; church, churches; fox, foxes; alkali, alkalies; hero, heroes.

Ch hard, and *o*; preceded by a vowel, take *s* only; as, Stomach, stomachs; folio, folios.

2. Nouns in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* into *ies* in the plural; as, Lady, ladies; but *y* preceded by a vowel follows the general rule; as, Day, days.

3. Nouns in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural; as, Loaf, loaves; life, lives.

The following words follow the general rule, viz.—Brief, chief, grief, handkerchief; hoof, proof, reproof, roof; dwarf, scarf, wharf; gulf; turf; cliff, sheriff, skiff, whiff; cuff, muff, puff, ruff, snuff, stuff; wife, strife; safe.

4. Some nouns, including all that end in *man*, take the Saxon *en* in the plural; as,

Ox	oxen	Footman	footmen
Child	children	Seaman,	seamen
Man	men	Statesman	statesmen
Alderman	aldermen	Woman	women
Englishman	Englishmen	Workman	workmen

5. Nouns which have two meanings have sometimes two forms of the plural. Thus:—

Brother has *brothers* in the plural to denote sons of the same parent, and *brethren* to denote members of the same society; *Die*, a stamp for coining, has *dies*; *die*, a little cube used in games, *dice*; *Genius* has *geniuses* when signifying persons of genius, *genii* when denoting aerial beings; *Index* has *indexes* when it means a table of contents, and *indices* when it denotes the exponent of an algebraic quantity; *Pea* has *peas* for single seeds, and *pease* for seeds in the mass; *Penny* has *pennies* when penny-pieces are intended, but *pence* when mere value is denoted.

6. A few nouns are entirely anomalous in the formation of the plural. Thus:—

Foot feet Louse lice Cow kine Tooth teeth
Goose geese Mouse mice Sow swine

7. A few nouns are used alike in both numbers; as, *Deer, sheep, swine*; the singular being distinguished from the plural by the article *a*; as, *A deer, a sheep, a swine*.

EXERCISES ON NUMBER.

Write,—or tell,—or spell, the *Plural of*

Fox,* book, leaf, candle, hat, loaf, wish, fish, sex, kiss, coach, inch, sky, army, duty, knife, echo, loss, cargo, wife, story, church, table, glass, study, calf, branch, street, potato, peach, sheaf, booby, rock, stone, house, hope, flower, city, difficulty, distress.

Day, boy, relay, chimney, journey, valley, needle, enemy, an army, a vale, an ant, a sheep, the hills, a valley, the sea, key, toy.

Monarch, tyro, grotto, nuncio, punctilio, ruff, muff, reproof, portico, handkerchief, gulf, hoof, fife, multitude, people, meeting, John, Lucy.

OBSERVATIONS:

Nouns which have been adopted without change from foreign languages generally retain their original plurals. Thus:—

From the Greek.

Antíthesis	antítheses	Hypóthesis	hypótheses
Autómaton	autómata	Métamorphosis	métamorphoses
Básis	báseis	Miáσμα	miásmata
Crisis	crises	Phásis	pháseis
Critérion	critéria	Phenómenon	phenómēna
Ellipsis	ellipses	Thésis	théses

* What is the plural of *fox*? *Foxes*. Why? Because nouns in *es, ed, ed* soft, *x, t, or c*, form the plural, by adding *es*.—What is the plural of *book*? *Books*. Why? Because the plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.—What is the plural of *leaf*? *Leaves*. Why? Because nouns in *f* or *fe* change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural.—What is the plural of *army*? *Armies*. Why? Because nouns in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *ies* in the plural.—What is the plural of *day*? *Days*. Spell it; *d, a, y, s*. Why not *d, a, i, e, s*? Because *y* with a vowel before it is not changed into *ies*: it takes *s* only.—What is the difference between *adding* and *changing*?—K. No. 37, 40, 41.

		<i>From the Latin.</i>	
Addendum	addenda	Ignis-fātus	ignes-fātul
Animāloulum	animāloula	Lāmīna	lāmīnæ
Apex	apices	Larva	larvæ
Appendix	appendices	Māgus	māgi
Arcānum	arcāna	Medium	media
Axis	axes	Memorandum	memoranda
Calx	calces	Momēntum	momēnta
Dātum	dāta	Nēbula	nēbulæ
Desiderātum	desiderāta	Oasis	oases
Dictum	dicta	Rādīus	rādīi
Efflūvium	efflūvia	Stīmulus	stīmull
Errātum	errāta	Strātum	strāta
Fōcus	fōci	Terminus	termini
Fungus	fungi	Vertex	vērteces
Gēnus	gēnera	Vortex	vortices
		<i>From the Hebrew.</i>	
Cherub	cherubim	Sērāph	sērāphim
		<i>From the French.</i>	
Beau	beaux	Monsieur	messieurs
		<i>From the Italian.</i>	
Bandit	} banditti	Conversazione	conversazioni
Banditto		Dilletante	dilletanti
Cognoscēte	cognoscenti	Virtuōso	virtuōsi

Proper names have necessarily no plural. But there are also common nouns which want the plural; among which the chief are—

Names of metals; as, *Iron, gold*: Names of grains; as, *Rye, wheat*: Names of liquids; as, *Beer, wine*: Names of arts and sciences; as, *Music, astronomy*: and names of abstract and moral qualities; as, *Warmth, meekness*.

It is only when the names of metals, grains, liquids, &c., express varieties of the substances denoted by them that they take a plural.

There are some common nouns, on the other hand, which have no singular; such as nouns descriptive of objects which have a plurality of parts, or which nature or art has made double. The following are examples:—

Annals	Compasses	Nuptials	Tidings
Archives	Drawers	Oats	Tongs
Ashes	Entrails	Pincers	Trousers
Bellows	Folk	Riches	Vespers
Billiards	Lungs	Soissors	Victuals
Bowels	Measles	Snuffers	Vitals
Breeches	Morals	Thanks	Wages

Alms, news, odds, pains, are generally used in the singular number.

The names of sciences ending in *ics*, as, *Ethics, mathematics, politics*, &c., admit of being used in either number, according as they are conceived to express unity or plurality.

Horse and foot, meaning *cavalry and infantry*, are used in the singular form with a plural verb.

Of GENDER.

There are *three genders*; the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The *Masculine* denotes the *male sex*; as, *A man, a boy*.

The *Feminine* denotes the *female sex*; as, *A woman, a girl*.

The *Neuter* denotes whatever is *without sex*; as, *Milk*.

There are three ways of distinguishing the sex.

1. By different words; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>
Bachelor	maid, spinster	Hart
Beau	belle	Horse
Boar	sow	Husband
Boy	girl	King
Bridegroom	bride	Lord
Brother	sister	Man
Buck	doe	Master
Bull	cow	Milker
Bullock	} heifer, — <i>hēf-er</i>	Moak
Ox or steer		hen	Nephew
Cock	filly	Ram
Colt	bitch	Singer
Dog	duck	Sir
Drake	countess	Sloven
Earl	mother	Son
Father	gammer	Stag
Gaffer	goose	Uncle
Gander	lady	Wizard



OBSERVATIONS.

NEUTER means *neither*, and therefore intimates that the nouns so called are neither masculine nor feminine.

Some nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*: such as, *Parent, child, cousin, infant, servant, neighbour, &c.*

Some nouns, naturally neuter, become, when personified, either *masculine* or *feminine*; as, when we say of the sun, *He* is setting; and of the moon, *She* is eclipsed.

2. By a difference of termination; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Author	authoress	Mayor	mayoress
Báron	bároness	Pátron	pátroness
Count	countess	Peer	peeress
Dauphin	dauphiness	Poet	poetess
Deacon	deaconess	Priest	priestess
Giant	giantess	Prince	princess
Heir	heiress	Prior	priores
Höet	höstess	Prophet	prophetess
Jew	Jewess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Lion	lioness	Viscount	viscountess
Abbot	abbess	Marquis	marchioness
Actor	actress	Master	mistress
Adulterer	adulteress	Protector	protectress
Benefactor	benefactress	Seamster	seamstress
Duke	duchess	Songster	songstress
Emperor	empress	Sorcerer	sorceress
Hunter	huntress	Tiger	tigress
Lad	lass	Traitor	traitress
Administrátor	administrátrix	Heritor	heretrix
Exécutor	exécutrix	Testator	testatrix
Czar	czarina	Landgrave	landgraving
Hëro	hër-o-ine	Margrave	margravine
Infant	infanta	Sultan	sultána
	Widower	widow	

3. By prefixing another word; as,

Cock-sparrow	hen-sparrow	Male-child	female-child
He-goat	she-goat	Man-servant	maid-servant

EXERCISES ON GENDER.

Tell the Gender of

Child, egg, father, garden, girl, horse, house-
maid, inkbottle, kinsfolk, lamb, mankind, navy,
Peter, Russia, ship, sovereign, star.

Name and spell the words opposite in Gender to

Abbot, bride, duke, earl, empress, goose, hero,
lady, landgrave, madam, milkmaid, moorcock,
peahen, ram, roe, steer, widow.

Of CASE.

Nouns have *three cases*; the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.

The *Nominative* and *Objective* are always *alike*.

The *possessive* is formed by adding an *apostrophē* and *s* to the *Nominative*; as, *Job's*.

When the plural ends in *s*, the *possessive* is formed by adding only an *apostrophe*: thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Man	Men	|	Lady	Ladies
<i>Poss.</i>	Man's	Men's	|	Lady's	Ladies'
<i>Obj.</i>	Man	Men	|	Lady	Ladies

EXERCISES ON CASE.

Tell the Cases (and also the number and gender) of the following Nouns:—

* *Father, brothers, mother's, boys, book, loaf, wife, sisters' bride's, the horse's hoof, John's boots, eagles' wings, a girls' school.*

Tell the possessive of

Charles, child, children, duchess, father, fathers, footman, leaf, leaves, life, mistress, negro, negroes, owner, owners, postchaise, prince, princess, princesses.

OBSERVATIONS.

Case denotes the relation which a noun bears to any other word with which it is connected.

The *Nominative* merely denotes the *name of a thing*.

The *Possessive* denotes *possession*; as, *Ann's book*.—*Possession* is often expressed by *of* as well as by *'s*.—K. 57 to 63, also 194 and 195.

The *Objective* denotes the *object* upon which an active verb or a preposition terminates.

* One method of using the above exercises is as follows:

Father, a noun, *singular* (number), *masculine* (gender), the *nominative* (case), plural, *fathers*. *Brothers*, a noun, *plural*, *masculine*, the *nominative*. *Mother's*, a noun, *singular*, *feminine*, the *possessive*. Spell it. K. 44.

By parsing in this manner, the pupil gives a correct answer to the questions. What part of speech is *father*? What number? What gender? What case? without obliging the teacher to *lose time* to no purpose in asking them. The pupil, however, should be made to understand that he is giving answers to questions which are always supposed to be asked.

As the *Nominative* and *Objective* are alike, no inaccuracy can result from the pupil's being allowed to call it always the *nominative*, till he come to the verb. Case may be altogether omitted till that time, the cases of pronouns excepted.—See Notes, page 37.

Of ADJECTIVES.

An *Adjective* is a word joined to a noun to express *quality* or *number*, or to point out a thing spoken of; as, A *good* boy; *ten* books; *the* moon.

EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

Point out the Nouns and Adjectives in the following phrases:—

A good scholar, a bright sky, deeds unjust and cruel, a sharp knife, an old hat and a new coat, wintry weather, dreary winter.

Prefix appropriate Adjectives to the following Nouns:—

Boy, castle, desk, fig, ghost, grapes, highway, island, lily, memory, navy, passenger.

The Adjectives *an* or *a* and *the* are commonly called Articles. *An* is used before a vowel or *h* silent; as, *an* age, *an* hour. *A* is used before a consonant; as, *a* day.

An or *a* is called the *Indefinite* Article; *the* is called the *Definite* Article.

EXERCISES ON THE ARTICLES.

Prefix the indefinite article to the following words:—

Army, ass, boot, coat, door, elm, eye, river, garden, hair, heir, island, nation, orange.

Correct the following errors:—

A error, an hen, an hill, a hour, a inkstand, an handful, an ewe, an useful book, an history.

OBSERVATIONS.

an is used before the long sound of *u*, and before *w* and *y*; as, *A unit*, *a week*, *a year*.

a is used before nouns in the *singular* number only.—It is used before the plural in nouns preceded by such phrases as *A few*, *a great many*; as, *a few* books; *a great many* apples. *The* is used before nouns in *both* numbers; as, *The* man, *the* men.

Of COMPARISON.

Adjectives have *three* degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The positive is the adjective in its simple form; as, *Wise, sweet*.

The comparative is formed by adding *r* or *er* to the positive; as, *Wise, wiser; sweet, sweeter*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*; as, *Wise, wisest; sweet, sweetest*.*—K. 67.

When the positive ends in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled before *er* and *est*; as, *Sad, sadder, saddest*.

When the positive ends in *y*, preceded by a consonant, the *y* is changed into *i* before *er* and *est*; as, *Happy, happier, happiest*.

OBSERVATIONS.

* The Positive expresses the *simple* quality; the Comparative a *higher* or *lower* degree of the quality; and the Superlative the *highest* or *lowest* degree.—K. 68, 72.

Adjectives of *one* syllable are generally compared by adding *er* and *est*; and those of *more* than one by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *More numerous, most numerous*; or by *less* and *least*; as, *Less merry, least merry*.

Some adjectives are compared by adding *most* to the comparative; as, *upper, uppermost; lower, lowermost; neither, neithermost*.

Nouns are often used as *adjectives*; as, *A gold ring, a silver cup*.—*Adjectives* often become nouns; as, *Much good*.

Some adjectives do not properly admit of comparison; such as, *True, perfect, universal, chief, extreme*.

Much is applied to things *weighed* or *measured*; *Many* to those that are *numbered*.—*Elder* and *eldest* to persons; *older* and *oldest* to things.



The following Adjectives are compared irregularly:—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bad, evil, or ill	worse	worst
Down	—	downmost
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost or first
Good	better	best
In	inner	inmost or innermost
Late	later or latter	latest or last
Little	less	least
Many or much	more	most
Near	nearer	nearest or next
Nigh	nigher	nighest or next
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest
Out	outer or utter	utmost or utmost
Up	upper	upmost or uppermost

EXERCISES ON COMPARISON.

Tell the degree of comparison of each Adjective:—

Less, most, richer, most extravagant, more, deepest, near, first, more dangerous, painful, next.

Compare the following Adjectives, and give the spelling:—

Able, beautiful, crafty, gay, glad, hardy, little, manly, many, precious, red, severe, testy, worthy, zealous.

Point out the Adjectives which cannot be compared:—

Eternal, external, extreme, holy, human, ill, large, matchless, perpendicular, right, square, supreme, unchangeable, wooden, yearly.

OBSERVATIONS.

Later is the opposite of *sooner*, or *earlier*; *latter*, of *former*; *latest*, of *soonest*, or *earliest*; *last*, of *first*.

Many refers to number, *much* to quantity; *more* and *most* to either number or quantity.

Down and *up* are used as adjectives in such phrases as the *down* and the *up* train.

Of PRONOUNS.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun; as, *John* is a good boy; *he* obeys the master.

There are *three* kinds of pronouns; *Personal*, *Relative*, and *Adjective*.

Of PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The *Personal Pronouns* are *I, thou, he, she, it*.

They have number, gender, and case, and are thus declined:—

Person.	Gender.	Case.	Singular.	Plural.
First,	Mas. or Fem.	Nom.	I	We
		Poss.	My or mine	Our or ours
		Obj.	Me	Us
Second,	Mas. or Fem.	Nom.	Thou	Ye or you
		Poss.	Thy or thine	Your or yours
		Obj.	Thee	You
Third,	Mas.	Nom.	He	They
		Poss.	His	Their or theirs
		Obj.	Him	Them
Third,	Fem.	Nom.	She	They
		Poss.	Her or hers	Their or theirs
		Obj.	Her	Them
Third,	Neut.	Nom.	It	They
		Poss.	Its	Their or theirs
		Obj.	It	Them

Exercises on Personal Pronouns.

I, thou, we, me, us, thine, he, him, she, hers, they, thee, them, its, theirs, you, her, ours, yours, mine, his, I, me, them, us, it, we.

OBSERVATIONS.

Hers, its, ours, yours, theirs, should never be written, *her's, it's, our's, your's, their's*; but *here, its, ours, &c.*

The compound personal pronouns, *Myself, thyself, himself, &c.*, are commonly joined either to the simple pronoun or to any ordinary noun to make it more emphatic.—See K. 80, 96.

These pronouns are generally in the *same case* with the noun or pronoun to which they are joined; as, "*She herself* said so;" "*They themselves* acknowledged it to me myself." "*The master himself* got it."

Self, when used alone, is a noun; as, "*Our fondness for self* is hurtful to others."—K. 96.

Of the two forms of the possessive case, the forms *My, thy, her, our, your, their*, are used before a noun; the forms *Mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, when no noun follows; *His* and *its* in either case.

Mine and *thine* are sometimes used before a vowel or *h* silent; as, *Mine* iniquities, *thine* eye, *mine* hour.

Of RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A *Relative Pronoun* is a word that relates to a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent; as, The master *who* taught us, &c.

The simple relatives are *who*, *which*, and *that*.

Who and *which* are thus declined:—

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>		<i>Singular and Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Who		which
<i>Poss.</i>	Whose		whose
<i>Obj.</i>	Whom		which

Who is applied to persons; as, The boy *who*.

Which is applied to inferior animals, and things without life; as, The dog *which* barks; the book *which* was lost.

That is often used instead of *who* or *which*, and is applied to persons, animals, or things; as, The boy *that* reads; the book *that* was lost.

What is a compound relative, including both the relative and the antecedent; as, This is *what* I wanted; that is, *the thing which* I wanted.

OBSERVATIONS.

In asking questions, *Who*, *which*, and *what*, are called *interrogatives*; as, *Who* said that? *What* did he do?—K. p. 84. *Note*.

The *Relative* is always of the same gender, number, and person, as its antecedent, but not always in the same case.—K. p. 43. b.†

The *Relative* sometimes refers to a *whole clause* as its antecedent; as, The Bill was rejected by the Lords, *which* excited no small degree of jealousy and discontent; that is, *which thing*, or *circumstance*, excited, &c.

Who is applied to inferior animals, when they are represented as speaking and acting like *rational beings*.—K. p. 43.* b.

What and *which* are sometimes used as *adjectives*; as, "I know not by what fatality the adversaries of the motion are impelled;" *which* things are an allegory. *Which* here is equal to *these*.—Page 69, b.

Whoever, *whosoever*, and *whose*, are compound relatives equal to *He who*; or, *The person that*.—K. 68, 69.

Of ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Certain adjectives are sometimes used as pronouns, and are therefore called Adjective Pronouns, or Pronominal Adjectives.

Of these there are three classes:—

1. The Distributives, *Each, every, either, neither.*

2. The Demonstratives, *This, that*, with their plurals, *these, those.*

3. The Indefinites, *None, any, all, such, whole, some, both, one, other, another*; the last three are declined like nouns.

OBSERVATIONS.

The above words may generally be considered adjectives with their nouns understood. But *none* is never joined to a noun; and *that* cannot be followed by a noun in such cases as, "He exchanged his hat for *that* of the coachman."

The possessive cases *My, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, are sometimes classed with the adjective pronouns.

You, with *former* and *latter*, may be called demonstrative pronouns, as well as *this* and *that*. See Syntax, R. 28, b.

That is sometimes a *Relative*, sometimes a *Demonstrative*, and sometimes a *Conjunction*.—K. 90.

That is a *Relative* when it can be turned into *who* or *which*, without destroying the sense; as, "The days *that* (or *which*) are past are gone for ever."

That is a *Demonstrative* when it points out something, the name of which is expressed or understood; as, "*That* is not the book I want."

That is a *Conjunction* when it cannot be turned into *who* or *which*; but marks a consequence, an indication, or final end; as, "He was so proud, *that* he was universally despised." "He answered, *that* he never was so happy as he is now." "Live well, *that* you may die well."

The phrase *none other* should be *no other*.—*Another* has no plural.

EXERCISES ON PRONOUNS.

Point out the Pronouns, and tell for what Nouns they are used:—

You are hungry, and I am thirsty. Mary lost her cap, but the maid found it and brought it to her. The soldiers told their officers that they had done as they had ordered them.

What kind of a Pronoun is

Mine, that, what, whosoever, her, every, both, these, another, whose, either, any, all, themselves, myself?*

Tell the person, number, gender, and case of

She, its, our, them, us, hers, they, thine, thou, me, ye, you, thee, your, theirs, it, him, her.

Point out the Relatives and their antecedents:—

The rain which fell last night. A man whose name is Smith. The book that you sent me was lost by the boy who carried it. The person with the white hat, whom you met yesterday, was the master of the ship that went down in the bay.

Put the Relative who, or which, instead of that:—

The dog that you bought is dead. The maid that he hired is from Wales. The horse that I bought at the fair was much admired by all that saw it there.

Is that a Relative or a Demonstrative in the following sentences:—

I abhor the tongue that flatters. That is a moss rose. The book that you gave me is lost. His portrait is better than that of his wife. My plan is better than that which you propose.

* The personal pronouns, *Himself, herself, themselves, &c.*, are used in the nominative case as well as in the objective; as, *Himself* shall come.

Of VERBS.

A *Verb* is a word which expresses *being, doing, or suffering*; as, I am, I love, I am loved.

Verbs are of three kinds, *Active, Passive, and Neuter*.

A verb *Active* expresses action passing from an *actor* to an *object*; as, James strikes the table.

A verb *Passive* expresses the suffering of an action, or the *enduring* of what *another* does; as, The table is struck.

A verb *Neuter* expresses *being*, or a state of *being*, or action confined to the *actor*; as, I am, he sleeps, you run.

Verbs are inflected, to express *Number, Person, Mood, and Tense or Time*.

Verbs have *two* Numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*; as, *He is, they are*.

Verbs have *three* Persons; as, *I love, thou lovest, he loves*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Active verbs are called *transitive* verbs, because the action passes from the actor to the object.—K. p. 58. NOTE.

Neuter verbs are called *intransitive*, because their action is confined to the actor, and does not pass over to an object. *Children should not be troubled too soon with the distinction between Active and Neuter verbs.*

Neuter, when applied to verbs, intimates that they are neither active nor passive.

Of the MOODS of VERBS.

Verbs have *five* moods; the Indicative, the Potential, the Subjunctive, the Imperative, and the Infinitive.

The *Indicative* mood simply declares a thing; as, *He loves*; he is *loved*; or it asks a question; as, *Lovest* thou me?

The *Potential* mood implies possibility, liberty, power, will, or obligation; as, The wind *may* blow; we *may* walk or ride; I *can* swim; he *would* not stay; you *should* obey your parents.

The *Subjunctive* mood represents a thing under a condition or supposition, and is preceded by a conjunction, expressed or understood, and followed by another verb; as, If you *wish* prosperity, *deserve* it.

The *Imperative* mood commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *Do* this; *deal* honestly; *deliver* my soul.

The *Infinitive* mood expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without distinction of number or person, and commonly has the word *to* before it; as, *To love*.

Of TENSES, or TIME.

Verbs have *six* tenses, the Present, the Past, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the Future, and the Future Perfect.

Explanations of the moods and tenses of verbs are inserted here for the sake of order; but it would be highly improper to detain the learner so long as to commit them to memory; he ought, therefore, after getting the definition of a verb, to proceed to the inflection of it without delay; and when he comes to the exercises on the verbs, he can look back to the definition of a verb active, &c., as occasion may require.

The *Present* tense expresses what is going on just now ; as, I *love* you ; I *strike* the table.

The *Past* tense represents the action or event either as past or finished ; as, He *broke* the bottle, and the brandy was spilt.

The *Perfect* tense implies that the action or event has just now been finished ; as, John *has cut* his finger ; my horse *has run* off.

The *Pluperfect* tense represents a thing as *past* before another event happened ; as, All the judges *had taken* their places *before* Sir Roger came.

The *Future* represents the action as yet to come ; as, He *will* return next week, and you *shall* see him.

The *Future Perfect* intimates that the action will be fully accomplished at or before the time of another future action or event ; as, I *shall have* learned my lesson *before* ten o'clock.

The *Participle* is a verbal adjective, which partakes of the nature of both a Verb and an Adjective, and expresses the meaning of the Verb after the manner of an Adjective ; as, *Loving* all men while he lived, he died, *loved* by all men.

OBSERVATIONS.

The *Participle* in *ing* represents a thing *going on*, but *not finished* ; as, The boy is *learning* his lesson. It is not confined exclusively to the *Active* voice, but is often legitimately used by the best authors in a *Passive* sense ; as, Silks are *selling* fast ; Houses are *letting* well. Some, however, prefer using the past participle with the auxiliary *being* ; as, Silks are *being sold* fast ; Houses are *being let* well. The first mode is perhaps the more simple and elegant,—the second is sometimes rendered necessary in order to prevent ambiguity or circumlocution.

The *Participle* in *ed* denotes that a thing is *done* and *completed* ; as I *have mended* my pen.

The *Perfect Participle* *having loved*, is common both to *Active* and *Passive* verbs, and states the *completion* of what took place *before* something else ; as, *Having shot* the hare, he went to lift it.

Remarks on some of the Tenses.

ON THE PRESENT.

1. The *Present tense* is used to express a *habit* or *custom*; as, He *snuffs*; She *goes* to church. It is sometimes applied to persons long since dead, when the narration of their actions excites our passions; as, "Nero is abhorred for his cruelty." "Milton is admired for his sublimity."

2. In historical narration, it is beautifully used for the *Past tense*; as, "Cæsar *leaves* Gaul, *crosses* the Rubicon, and *enters* Italy with five thousand men."—It is sometimes used with fine effect for the *Perfect*; as, "In the book of Genesis, Moses *tells* us who were the descendants of Abraham,"—for *has told* us.

3. When preceded by such words as *when*, *before*, *as soon as*, *after*, it expresses the relative time of a *future* action; as, When he *comes*, he will be welcome—As soon as the post *arrives*, the letters will be delivered.

4. In the *continue*, *progressive*, or *compound form*, it expresses an action *begun* and *going on just now*, but not complete; as, I *am studying* my lesson. He *is writing* a letter.

ON THE PAST.

The *Past tense* is used when the action or state is *limited* by the *circumstance of time* or *place*; as, "We *saw* him *yesterday*." "We were in bed *when he arrived*." Here the words *yesterday* and *when* limit the action and state to a particular time.—After *death* all agents are spoken of in the *Past tense*, because time is limited or defined by the *life* of the person; as, "Mary Queen of Scots *was* remarkable for her beauty."

This tense is peculiarly appropriated to the *narrative style*; because all narration implies some *circumstance*; as, "Socrates *refused* to adore false gods." Here the period of Socrates's life, being a limited part of past time, circumscribes the narration.—It is improper then to say of one already dead, "He *has been* much admired: he *has done* much good:" but, "He *was* much admired; he *did* much good."

Although the *Past tense* is used when the action is *circumstantially* expressed by a word or sentiment that limits the time of the action to some definite portion of past time, yet such words as *often*, *sometimes*, *many a time*, *frequently*, and similar vague intimations of time, except in *narrations*, require the *perfect*, because they admit a certain latitude, and do not limit

the action to any definite portion of past time; thus, "How often have we seen the proud despised."

ON THE PERFECT.

The *Perfect tense* chiefly denotes the accomplishment of mere facts without any necessary relation to *time* or *place*, or any other circumstance of their existence; as, Philosophers have endeavoured to investigate the origin of evil. In general, however, it denotes,

1. An action newly finished; as, I have heard great news. The post has arrived, but he has brought no letters for you.
2. An action done in a definite space of time (such as a day, a week, a year), a part of which has yet to elapse; as, I have spent this day well.
3. An action perfected some time ago, but whose consequences extend to the present time; as, We have neglected our duty, and are therefore unhappy.

Duration or *existence* requires the *perfect*; as, He has been dead four days. We say, Cicero has written orations, because the orations are still in *existence*; but we cannot say, Cicero has written poems, because the poems do not exist; they are lost; therefore, we must say, "Cicero wrote poems."

The following are a few instances in which the *Perfect* is improperly used for the *Past*. "I have somewhere met with the epitaph of a charitable man, which has very much pleased me." Spect. No. 177. The latter part of this sentence is rather *narrative* than *assertive*; and therefore it should be—which very much pleased me, that is, when I read it.—"When that the poor hath cried, Cæsar hath wept." Shakspeare. The style is here *narrative*; Cæsar was dead. It should therefore be, "When the poor cried, Cæsar wept."—"Though in old age, the circle of our pleasure is more contracted than it has formerly been; yet, &c." Blair, Serm. 12. It should be, "than it formerly was;" because in old age, the former stages of life, contrasted with the present, convey an idea, not of *completion*, but of *limitation*, and thus become a subject of *narration*, rather than of *assertion*. "I have known him, Eugenius, when he has been going to a play, or an opera, divert the money which was designed for that purpose, upon an object of charity whom he has met with in the street." Spect. No. 177. It should be "When he was going," and "whom he met with in the street;" because the actions are *circumstantially* related by the phrases, *when going to a play* and *in the street*.

ON THE FUTURE PERFECT.

Upon more careful reflection, it appears to me, that the Second Future should have *will* or *shall* in all the persons, as in the *first*. Mr. Murray has excluded *will* from the *first* person, and *shall* from the *second* and *third*, because they appear to him to be incorrectly applied; and in the examples which he has adduced, they are incorrectly applied; but this is not a sufficient reason for excluding them altogether from every sentence. The fault is in the writer; he has applied them wrong, a thing that is often done with *will* and *shall* in the *first* future, as well as in the *second*.

If I am at liberty to use *will* in the first future, to intimate my resolution to perform a future action, as, "I *will* go to church, for I am resolved to go," why should I not employ *will* in the second future, to intimate my resolution or determination to have an action finished before a specified future time? Thus, "I *will* have written my letters before supper:" that is, I am determined to have my letters finished before supper. Were the truth of this affirmation, respecting the time of finishing the letters, called in question, the propriety of using *will* in the *first* person would be unquestionable. Thus, You will not have finished your letters before supper, I am sure. Yes, I *will*. Will what? "Will have finished my letters."

Shall, in like manner, may with propriety be applied to the *second* and *third* persons. In the *third* person, for instance, if I say, "He *will* have paid me his bill before June," I merely foretell what he will have done; but that is not what I intended to say. I meant to convey the idea, that since I have found him so dilatory, I will *compel* him to pay it before June; and as this was my meaning, I *should* have employed *shall*, as in the first future, and said, "He *shall* have paid me his bill before June."

It is true that we seldom use this future; we rather express the idea as nearly as we can, by the *first* future, and say, "He shall pay his bill before June;" but when we do use the *second* future, it is evident, I trust, from the examples just given, that *shall* and *will* should be applied in it, exactly as they are in the *first*.—See 1 Cor. xv. 24.—Luke xvii. 10.

ON THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary verbs, as they are called, such as, *Do*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, and *must*, are in reality separate verbs, and were originally used as such, having after them, either the Past Participle, or the *Infinitive* Mood, with the *to* suppressed, for

the sake of sound, as it is after *bid*, *dare*, &c. (see Syntax, Rule VI.) Thus, I *have loved*. We *may to love*. We *will to speak*. I *do to write*. I *may to have loved*. We *might to have got a prize*. I *would to have given him the book*. All *must to die*. I *shall to stop*. I *can to go*.

These verbs are always joined in this manner either to the *Infinitive* or participle; and although this would be a simpler way of parsing the verb than the common, yet, in compliment perhaps to the Greek and Latin, grammarians in general consider the auxiliary and the following verb in the infinitive or participle as *one* verb, and parse and construe it accordingly.

Several of the auxiliaries in the Potential mood refer to *present*, *past*, and *future* time. This needs not excite surprise; for even the present Indicative can be made to express *future* time, as well as the future itself. Thus, "He *leaves town to-morrow*."

Present time is expressed in the following sentence, "I wish he *could* or *would* come just now."

Past time is expressed with the similar auxiliaries; as, "It was my desire that he *should*, or *would* come yesterday." "Though he *was* ill he *might* recover."

Future.—I am anxious that he *should*, or *would* come to-morrow. If he come I *may* speak to him. If he would delay his journey a few days, I *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* accompany him.

Although such examples as these are commonly adduced as proofs that these auxiliaries refer to *present*, *past*, and *future* time, yet I think it is pretty evident that *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, with *may* and *can*, merely express *liberty*, *ability*, *will*, and *duty*, without any reference to *time* at all, and that the precise time is generally determined by the drift or scope of the sentence, or rather by the *adverb* or participle that is subjoined or understood, and not by these auxiliaries.

Must and *ought*, for instance, merely imply *necessity* and *obligation*, without any necessary relation to *time*; for when I say, "I *must* do it," *must* merely denotes the *necessity* I am under, and do the present time, which might easily be made *future*, by saying, "I *must* do it *next week*:" Here future time is expressed by *next week*, and not by *must*. If I say, "I *must* have done it:" Here *must* merely expresses *necessity* as before, and I *have done* the *past time*. "These *ought ye to do*." Here *ought* merely denotes obligation, and *do* the *present time*.

"These ought ye to have done:" Here *ought* merely expresses *duty* or *obligation*, as before; but the time of its existence is denoted as past, by *to have done*, and not by *ought*, as Mr. Murray and many others say.

As *must* will not admit of the *objective* after it; nor is even preceded or succeeded by the *sign* of the *infinitive*, it has been considered as an absolute auxiliary, like *may* or *can*, belonging to the Potential-Mood.

Ought, on the contrary, is an independent verb, though defective, and always governs another verb in the infinitive.

Of WILL and SHALL.

Will, in the *first* person singular and *plural*, intimates *resolution* and *promising*; as, I *will* not let you that house unless you give me a higher rent. We *will* go. I *will* give you a handsome watch.

Will, in the *second* and *third* persons, commonly *foretells*; as, He *will* reward the righteous. You, or they, *will* be very happy there.

Shall, in the *first* person, only *foretells*; as, I, or we, *shall* go to-morrow. In the *second* and *third* persons, *Shall*, *promises*, *commands*, or *threatens*; as, They, or you, *shall* be rewarded. Thou *shalt* not be dishonest. He that steals *shall* be disgraced.

But this must be understood of affirmative sentences only; for when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse commonly takes place; as, *Shall* I send you a little of the pie? I. e. *will* you permit me to send it? *Will* James return to-morrow? I. e. do you expect him?

When the *second* and *third* persons are represented as the subjects of their own expressions, or their own thoughts, *SHALL* *foretells*, as in the *first* person; as, "He says he *shall* be a loser by this bargain." "Do you suppose you *shall* go?" and *WILL* *promises*, as in the *first* person; as, "He says he *will* bring Pope's Homer to-morrow." You say you *will* certainly come.

Of *Shall* it may be remarked, that it never expresses the *will* or *resolution* of its *Nominative*: Thus, I *shall* fall; Thou *shalt* love thy neighbour; He *shall* be rewarded, express no resolution on the part of *I, thou, he*.

Did *Will*, on the contrary, always intimate the resolution of its *Nom.* the difficulty of applying *will* and *shall* would be at an end; but this cannot be said; for though *will* in the *first* person always expresses the resolution of its *Nom.*, yet in the *second* and *third* person it does not *always foretell*, but often intimates the resolution of its *Nom.* as strongly as it does in the *first* person; thus, Ye *will* not do your duty, that you may prosper. He *will* not shoot his dog though he sees he is mad. *Deut. xv. 7.* see also verse 9. Accordingly *would*, the past time of *will*, is used in the same manner; as, He *would* not listen to his father's advice.

Should and *would* are subject to the same rules as *shall* and *will*; they are generally attended with a supposition; as, Were I to run, I *should* soon be fatigued, &c.

Should is often used instead of *ought* to express duty or obligation; as, We *should* remember the poor. We *ought* to obey the laws.

The verbs *Be, do, have, shall, will, may, can,* are called *Auxiliary* or helping verbs, because they are usually combined with other verbs in order to indicate number, person, mood, or tense.

The auxiliary verbs are thus inflected:—

TO BE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I am	1. We are
2. Thou art or you are	2. Ye or you are
3. He, she, or it is	3. They are

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I was	1. We were
2. Thou wast or you were	2. Ye or you were
3. He, she, or it was	3. They were

Perfect Tense.

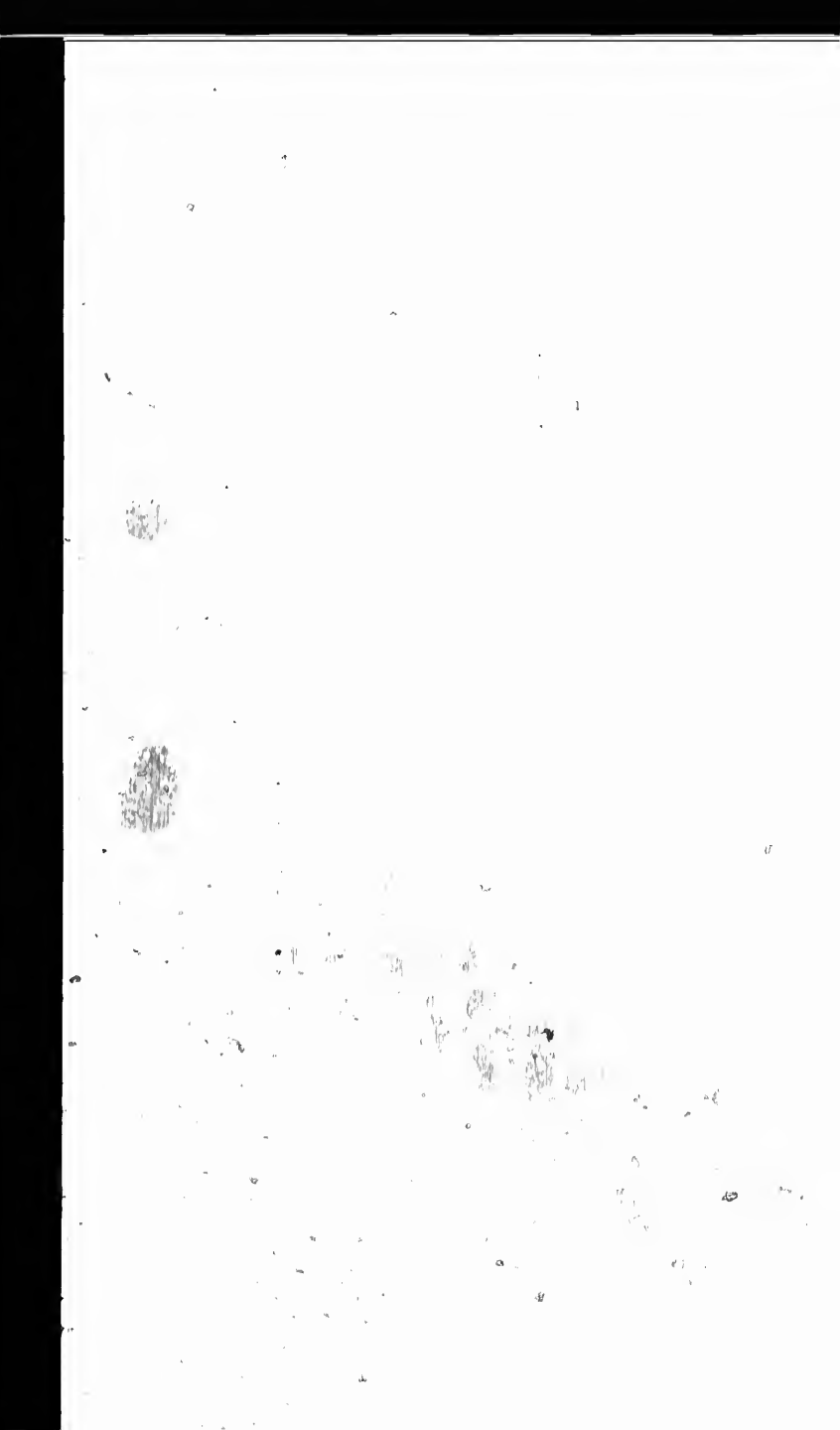
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I have been	1. We have been
2. Thou hast been	2. You have been
3. He has been	3. They have been

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I had been	1. We had been
2. Thou hadst been	2. You had been
3. He had been	3. They had been

Future Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall or will be	1. We shall or will be
2. Thou shalt or wilt be	2. You shall or will be
3. He shall or will be	3. They shall or will be



Future Perfect Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will have been | 1. We shall or will have been |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt have been | 2. Ye or you shall or will have been |
| 3. He, she, or it shall or will have been | 3. They shall or will have been |

Potential Mood.

Present Terse.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I may* or can be | 1. We may or can be |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst be | 2. Ye or you may or can be |
| 3. He, she, or it may or can be | 3. They may or can be |

Past.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I might, &c. be | 1. We might be |
| 2. Thou mightst be | 2. Ye or you might be |
| 3. He, she, or it might be | 3. They might be |

Perfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I may* or can have been | 1. We may or can have been |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have been | 2. Ye or you may or can have been |
| 3. He, she, or it may or can have been | 3. They may or can have been |

Pluperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I might have been | 1. We might have been |
| 2. Thou mightst have been | 2. Ye or you might have been |
| 3. He, she, or it might have been | 3. They might have been |

* See Note, p. 35.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>1. If I be*</p> <p>2. If thou or you be</p> <p>3. If he, she, or it be</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>1. If we be</p> <p>2. If ye or you be</p> <p>3. If they be</p> |
|---|---|

Past Tense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>1. If I were</p> <p>2. If thou wert or you were</p> <p>3. If he, she, or it were</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>1. If we were</p> <p>2. If ye or you were</p> <p>3. If they were</p> |
|---|---|

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>Be, or be thou</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>Be, or be ye or you</p> |
|---|--|

Infinitive Mood.

To be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Being Past, Been

TO DO.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>1. I do</p> <p>2. Thou dost or you do</p> <p>3. He, she, or it does, doeth, or doth</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>1. We do</p> <p>2. Ye or you do</p> <p>3. They do</p> |
|--|--|

Past Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>1. I did</p> <p>2. Thou didst or you did</p> <p>3. He, she, or it did</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>1. We did</p> <p>2. Ye or you did</p> <p>3. They did</p> |
|--|---|

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p><i>Singular.</i></p> <p>Do, or do thou</p> | <p><i>Plural.</i></p> <p>Do, or do ye or you</p> |
|---|--|

* Though, unless, except, whether, &c., may be here used as well as *if*.

Infinitive Mood.

To do.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Doing *Past, Done*

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I have | 1. We have |
| 2. Thou hast or you have | 2. Ye or you have |
| 3. He, she, or it has or hath | 3. They have |

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. I had | 1. We had |
| 2. Thou hadst or you had | 2. Ye or you had |
| 3. He, she, or it had | 3. They had |

Infinitive Mood.

To have.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Having *Past, had*

SHALL.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I shall | 1. We shall |
| 2. Thou shalt or you shall | 2. Ye or you shall |
| 3. He, she, or it shall | 3. They shall |

Past Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I should | 1. We should |
| 2. Thou shouldst or you should | 2. Ye or you should |
| 3. He, she, or it should | 3. They should |

1. I
2. T
3. H

1. I
2. T
3. H

1. I
2. T
3. H

1. I
2. T
3. H

1. I
2. T
3. H

1. I
2. T
3. H

Be, d
Must
Be is of
true m

WILL.

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I will | | 1. We will |
| 2. Thou wilt or you will | | 2. Ye or you will |
| 3. He, she, or it will | | 3. They will |

Past Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I would | | 1. We would |
| 2. Thou wouldst or you would | | 2. Ye or you would |
| 3. He, she, or it would | | 3. They would |

MAY.

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--|------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I may | | 1. We may |
| 2. Thou mayst or you may | | 2. Ye or you may |
| 3. He, she, or it may | | 3. They may |

Past Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I might | | 1. We might |
| 2. Thou mightst or you might | | 2. Ye or you might |
| 3. He, she, or it might | | 3. They might |

CAN.

Present Tense.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--|------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I can | | 1. We can |
| 2. Thou canst or you can | | 2. Ye or you can |
| 3. He, she, or it can | | 3. They can |

Past Tense.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I could | | 1. We could |
| 2. Thou couldst or you could | | 2. Ye or you could |
| 3. He, she, or it could | | 3. They could |

OBSERVATIONS.

Be, do, have, and will, are not always auxiliary but often principal verbs. *Must,* which is held by many to be an auxiliary verb, is not inflected. *Be* is often used in the Scriptures for the Present Indicative; as, *We be true men.*

CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VERB
TO LOVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. <i>person</i> I love		1. We love	
2. Thou lovest		2. You* love	
3. He loves or loveth		3. They love	

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I loved		1. We loved	
2. Thou lovedst		2. You loved	
3. He loved		3. They loved	

Perfect Tense.

Its signs are *have, hast, has, or hath.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I have loved		1. We have loved	
2. Thou hast loved		2. You have loved	
3. He <i>has</i> or <i>hath</i> loved		3. They have loved	

Pluperfect Tense.

Signs, *had, hadst.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I had loved		1. We had loved	
2. Thou hadst loved		2. You had loved	
3. He had loved		3. They had loved	

Future Tense.

Signs, *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I shall or will love		1. We shall or will love	
2. Thou shalt or wilt love		2. You shall or will love	
3. He shall or will love		3. They shall or will love	

* You has always a plural verb, even when applied to a single individual.

Future Perfect.

[See page 26.]

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will have loved | 1. We shall or will have loved |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt have loved | 2. You shall or will have loved |
| 3. He shall or will have loved | 3. They shall or will have loved |

Potential Mood.

Present.

Signs, *may, can, or must.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I may or can* love | 1. We may or can love |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst love | 2. You may or can love |
| 3. He may or can love | 3. They may or can love |

Past.

Signs, *might, could, would, or should.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should love | 1. We might, could, would, or should love |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love | 2. You might, could, would, or should love |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should love | 3. They might, could, would, or should love |

Perfect.

Signs, *may, can, or must have.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I may or can* have loved | 1. We may or can have loved |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have loved | 2. You may or can have loved |
| 3. He may or can have loved | 3. They may or can have loved |

* *Must*, although it belongs as properly to the *present* and *perfect* potential as *may* or *can*, has been omitted for want of room; but in going over these tenses with the auxiliaries, *one by one*, it is easy to take it in thus: *I must love thou must love, &c.* See 2d note, p. 40.

- Pluperfect.

Signs, *might, could, would, or should have.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have loved | 1. We might, could, would, or should have loved |
| 2. Thou mightst, &c., have loved | 2. You might have loved |
| 3. He might have loved | 3. They might have loved |

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. If I love | 1. If we love |
| 2. If thou love | 2. If you love |
| 3. If he love | 3. If they love* |

Imperative Mood.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2. Love, or love thou, or do thou love† | 2. Love, or love ye or you, or do ye love |
|---|---|

Infinitive Mood.

*Present, To love**Perfect, To have loved*

PARTICIPLES.

*Present, Loving**Past, Loved**Perfect, Having loved‡*

* The remaining tenses in the Subjunctive mood are, in every respect, similar to the corresponding tenses of the Indicative and Potential, with the addition to the verb of a conjunction expressed or implied, denoting a condition or supposition.

† The Imperative Mood is not entitled to *three* persons. In strict propriety it has only the *second* person in both numbers. For when I say, *Let me love*, I mean, *Permit thou me to love*. Hence, *let me love* is construed thus: *let thou me (to) love, or do thou let me (to) love*. *To*, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after *let*. See Syntax, R. VI. No one will say that *permit (me to love)* is the first person singular, imperative mood: then, why should *let (me to love)*, which is exactly similar, be called the *first* person? The *Latin verb* wants the *second* person, and if it has the *third*, it has also a different termination for it, which is not the case in the English verb. H. 118.—‡ See Key, No. 208-211.

Exercises on the Verb Active.

* We love him; James loves me; it amuses him; we shall conduct them; they will divide the spoil; soldiers should defend their country; friends invite friends; she can read her lesson; she may play a tune; you might please her; thou mayst ask him; he may have betrayed us; we might have diverted the children; John can deliver the message.

I love; to love; love; reprove thou; has loved; we tied the knot; if we love; if thou love; they could have commanded armies; to love; to baptize; to have loved; loved; loving; to survey; having surveyed; write a letter; read your lesson; thou hast obeyed my voice; honour thy father.

The Teacher, if he chooses, may now acquaint the learner with the difference between the Nominative and the Objective.

The Nominative *acts*; the Objective is *acted upon*; as, *He eats apples.* The Nominative commonly comes *before* the verb, the Objective *after* it.

Concerning pronouns, it may be observed, that the first *speaks*; the second is spoken *to*; and the third (or any noun) is spoken *of*.

* We may parse the first sentence, for example. *We love him*; *We*, the first personal pronoun, plural, masculine, or fem. the Nominative; *love*, a verb active, the first person, plural, present, Indicative; *him*, the third personal pronoun, singular, masculine, the Objective.

QUESTIONS which should be put to the pupils.

How do you know that *love* is plural? *Ans.* Because *we* its nom. is plural. How do you know that *love* is the first person? *Ans.* Because *we* is the first personal pronoun, and the verb is always of the same number and person with the noun or pronoun before it. K. 102, 104.

Many of the phrases in this page may be converted into exercises of a different kind; thus, the meaning of the sentence, *We love him*, may be expressed by the passive voice; as, *He is loved by us.*

It may also be turned into a question, or made a negative; as, *Do we love him?* &c. *We do not love him.*

These are a few of the ways of using the exercises on a single page, but there is no limit to the variety of methods that every ingenious and diligent Teacher may invent and adopt to engage the attention and improve the understanding of his pupils.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERB
TO BE LOVED.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Am loved	1. Are loved
2. Art loved	2. Are loved
3. Is loved	3. Are loved

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Was loved	1. Were loved
2. Wast loved	2. Were loved
3. Was loved	3. Were loved

Perfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Have been loved	1. Have been loved
2. Hast been loved	2. Have been loved
3. Has been loved	3. Have been loved

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Had been loved	1. Had been loved
2. Hadst been loved	2. Had been loved
3. Had been loved	3. Had been loved

Future Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Shall or will be loved	1. Shall or will be loved
2. Shalt or wilt be loved	2. Shall or will be loved
3. Shall or will be loved	3. Shall or will be loved

A Passive Verb is formed by putting the Past Participles of any Active verb after the verb to be through all its Moods and Tenses
K. 126, 127.

Future Perfect Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved | 1. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |
| 2. Shalt <i>or</i> wilt have been loved | 2. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |
| 3. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved | 3. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |

Potential Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. May <i>or</i> can be loved * | 1. May <i>or</i> can be loved |
| 2. Mayst <i>or</i> canst be loved | 2. May <i>or</i> can be loved |
| 3. May <i>or</i> can be loved | 3. May <i>or</i> can be loved |

Past.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Might, &c. be loved | 1. Might be loved |
| 2. Mightst be loved | 2. Might be loved |
| 3. Might be loved | 3. Might be loved |

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. May, &c. have been loved | 1. May have been loved |
| 2. Mayst have been loved | 2. May have been loved |
| 3. May have been loved | 3. May have been loved |

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Might, &c. have been loved | 1. Might have been loved |
| 2. Mightst have been loved | 2. Might have been loved |
| 3. Might have been loved | 3. Might have been loved |

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If* I be loved | 1. If we be loved |
| 2. If thou be loved | 2. If you be loved |
| 3. If he be loved | 3. If they be loved |

Past.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I were loved | 1. If we were loved |
| 2. If thou wert loved | 2. If you were loved |
| 3. If he were loved | 3. If they were loved |

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 2. Be thou loved | 2. Be ye or you loved |

Infinitive Mood.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Present, To be loved</i> | <i>Perfect, To have been loved</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|

PARTICIPLES.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Being loved</i> | <i>Past. Been loved</i> | <i>Perf. Having been loved</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|

* The Pupil may at times be requested to throw out *if* and put *unless*, *though*, *whether*, or *lest*, in its place.

After the pupil is expert in going over the tenses of the verb as they are, he may be taught to omit all the auxiliaries but *one*, and go over the verb thus: *Present Potential*, I *may* love; thou *mayst* love; he *may* love, &c.; and then with the next auxiliary, thus: I *can* love; thou *canst* love; he *can* love, &c.; and then with *must*, thus: I *must* love; thou *must* love; he *must* love, &c.; and then with the auxiliaries of the *Past Potential*, thus: I *might* love; thou *mightst* love, &c.— See also *Key*, No. 112, p. 55, and Nos. 113, 114, p. 56.

Exercises on the Verb Passive.

They are loved; we were loved; thou art loved; it is loved; she was loved; he has been loved; you have been loved; I have been loved; thou hadst been loved; we shall be loved; thou wilt be loved; they will be loved; I shall have been loved; you will have been loved.

He can be loved; thou mayst be loved; she must be loved; they might be loved; ye would be loved; they should be loved; I could be loved; thou canst have been loved; it may have been loved; you might have been loved; if I be loved;* thou wert loved; we be loved; they be loved.—Be thou loved; be ye loved; you be loved.—To be loved; loved; having been loved; to have been loved; being loved.

Promiscuous Exercises on Verbs and Cases of Nouns and Pronouns.

Tie John's shoes; this is Jane's bonnet; ask mamma; he has learned his lesson; she invited him; your father may commend you; he was baptized; the minister baptized him; we should have delivered our message; papa will reprove us; divide the apples; the captain had commanded his soldiers to pursue the enemy; Eliza diverted her brother; a hunter killed a hare; were* I loved; were we good, we should be happy.†

* A conjunction is frequently to be understood here.
† See Exercises of a different sort, page 54.

An *Active* or a *Neuter Verb* may be conjugated through all its moods and tenses, by adding its *Present Participle* to the verb *To be*. This is called the *Progressive form*; * because it expresses the continuation of action or state: *Thus*,

Present.
I am loving
Thou art loving
He is loving, &c.

Past.
I was loving
Thou wast loving
He was loving, &c.

The Present and Past Indicative may also be conjugated by the assistance of Do. This is called the Emphatic form: Thus,

Present.
I do love
Thou dost love
He does love, &c.

Past.
I did love
Thou didst love
He did love, &c.

RULE I.

Verbs ending in ss, sh, ch, x, or o, form the third person singular of the Present Indicative, by adding ES: Thus,

He dress-es, march-es, brush-es, fix-es, go-es.

RULE II.

Verbs in y, change y into i before the terminations est, es, eth, and ed; but not before ing;—Y, with a vowel before it, is not changed into i: Thus,

Pres. Try, triest, tries or trieth. *Past.* tried. *Part.* trying.
Pres. Pray, prayest, prays or prayeth. *Past.* prayed. *Part.* praying.

RULE III.

Verbs accented on the last syllable, and verbs of one syllable, ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before the terminations est, eth, ed, ing; but never before s: Thus,

Allot, allottest, allots, allotteth, allotted, allotting.
Blot, blottest, blots, blotteth, blotted, blotting.

* A *Passive verb* has NO *Progressive Form*; such as, *I am being loved—I was being loved—I have been being loved—I had been being loved—I shall be being loved—I shall have been being loved.—Potential—I can be being loved, &c.* through the whole verb.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

A *regular* verb is one that forms its *past tense* and *past participle* by adding *d* or *ed* to the present; as, *Love, loved, loved.*

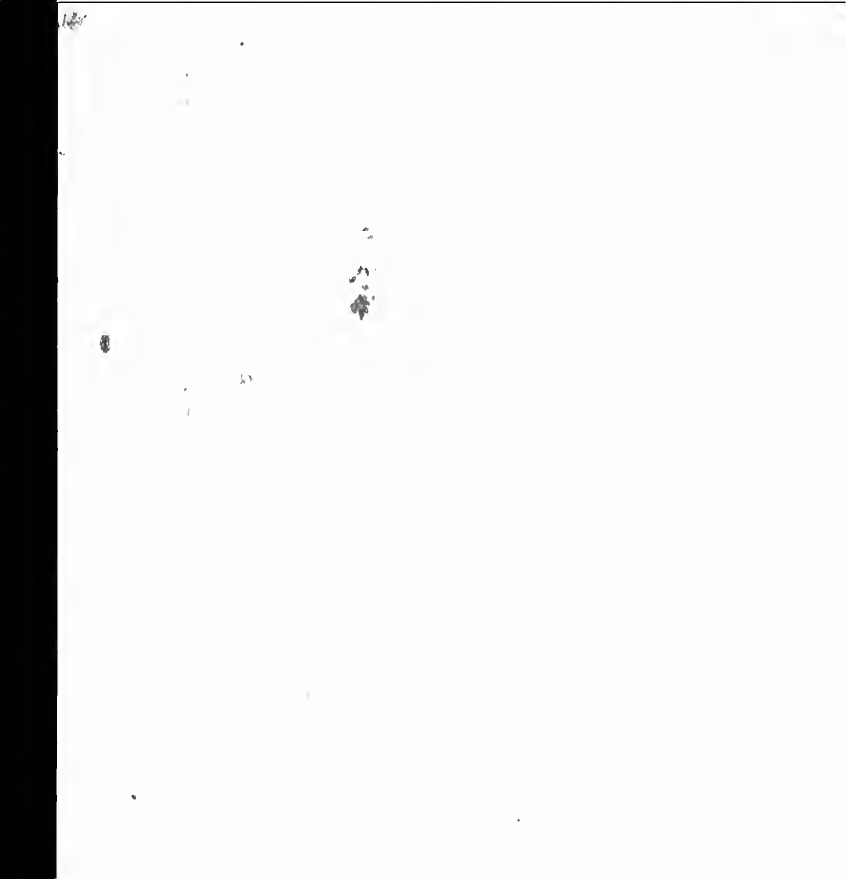
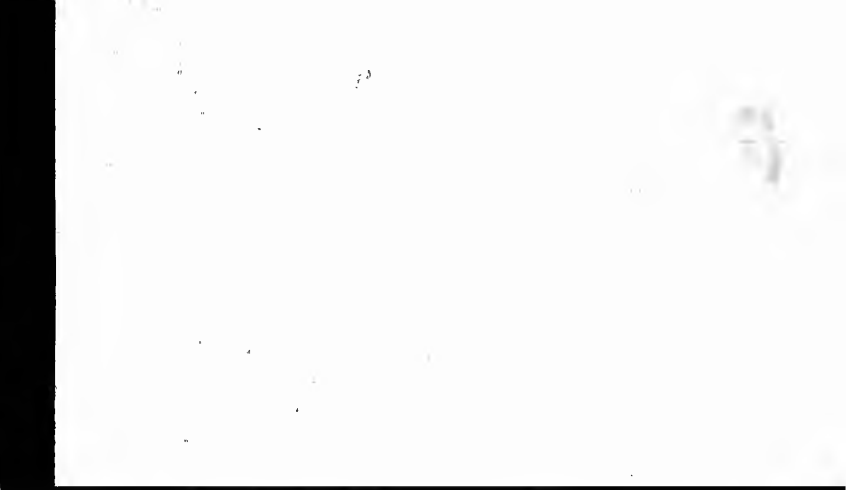
An *irregular* verb is one that does not form both its *past tense* and *past participle*, by adding *d* or *ed* to the present; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke R*	awaked
Beār, to bring forth	bore, † bare	börn
Beār, to carry	bore, bare	börne
Beat	beat	beaten or beat
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld or beholden
Bend	bent R	bent R
Bereave	bereft R	bereft R (K. 136.)
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid, for-	bad, bāde	bidden
Bind, un-	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blow	blew	blown
Breāk	broke	broken
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build, re-	built ‡	built

* Those verbs which are conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly, are marked with an R.

† *Bore* is now more used than *bare*.

‡ *Build, dwell*, and several other verbs have the regular form, *builded, dwelled*, &c.—See K. No. 135.



<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Burst	burst	burst
Buy	bought	bought
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught R	caught R
Chide	chid	chidden, or chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, to adhere	clave R	cleaved
Cleave, to split	clove, or cleft	cloven, or cleft
Cling	clung	clung
Clothe	clothed	clad R
Come, be-	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Creep	crept	crept
Crow	crew R	crowed
Cut	cut	cut
Dare, to venture	durst	dared
Dare, to challenge	is R dared	dared
Deal	děalt R	děalt R
Dig	dug, or digged	dug, or digged
Do, un-*	did	done
Draw, with-	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Dwell	dwelt R	dwelt R—p. 43 b
Eat	ēat†	ēaten†
Fall, be-	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought

* The compound verbs are conjugated like the simple, by prefixing the syllables appended to them; thus, *Undo, undid, undone.*

† I have excluded *eat* as the Past and Past Participle of this verb, for though sometimes used by Milton and a few others, the use of it does not rest on good authority, and this verb is sufficiently irregular already.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Find	found	found
Flee, <i>from a foe</i>	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Fly, <i>as a bird</i>	flew	flown
Förbäar	forbore	forbörne
Forget	forgot	forgotten, forgot
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get, <i>be- for-</i>	got*	got, gotten†
Gild	gilt R	gilt R
Gird, <i>be- en-</i>	girt R	girt R
Give, <i>for- mis-</i>	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grave, <i>en- R</i>	graved	graven
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown
Hang	hung	hung‡
Häve	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Help	helped	holpen R
Hew, <i>rough-</i>	hewed	hewn R
Hide	hid	hidden; or hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold, <i>be- with-</i>	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	knelt R	knelt
Knit	knit R	knit, or knitted
Know	knew	known

* *Got* and *begot* are often used in the Scriptures for *got* and *begot*.

† *Gotten* is nearly *obsolete*. Its compound *forgotten* is still in good use.

‡ *Hang*, to take away life by hanging, is regular; as, The robber was hanged, but the gown was hung up.

Participle.

R
i, or chid

or cleft

digged

p. 43 b

prefixing

verb, for
it does not
ready.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Lade	laded	laden
Lay, <i>in-</i>	laid	laid
Lead, <i>mis-</i>	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, <i>to lie down</i>	lay	lain, or liēn
Light	lit R	lit R
Load	loaded	loaden R
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	mēant	mēant
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown R
Pay, <i>re-</i>	paid	paid
Pen, <i>to shut up</i>	pent	pent
Put	put	put
Quit	quit, or quitted	quit R
Rēad	rēad	rēad
Rend	rent	rent
Bid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang, or rung*	rung
Rise, <i>a-</i>	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Run	ran	run
Saw	sawed	sawn R
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Seek	sought	sought

* Where the Past might be either *ang* or *ung*, &c., I have given *ang* the preference, which it certainly ought to have.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Seethe	seethed, or sod	sodden
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Set, <i>be-</i>	set	set
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape, <i>mis-</i>	shaped	shapen R
Shave	shaved	shaven R
Shear	shore R	shörn
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	shone R	shöne R
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Show*	showed	shown
Shred	shred	shred
Shrink	shrank, or shrunk	shrunk
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang, or sung	sung
Sink	sank, or sunk	sunk
Sit	satt†	sitten, or satt†
Slay	slew	slain
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	slid	slidden
Sling	slang, or slung	slung
Slink	slank, or slunk	slunk
Slit	slit, or slitted	slit, or slitted
Smite	smote	smitten
Sow	sowed	sown R
Speak, <i>be-</i>	spoke, spake	spoken

* Or *Show, shewed, shewn*—pronounced *show*, &c. See Note, next page.

† Many authors, both here and in America, use *sate* as the Past time of *sit*; but this is improper; for it is apt to be confounded with *sate*, to glut.

‡ *Sitten* is preferable, though obsolescent.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Speed	sped	sped
Spend, <i>mis-</i>	spent	spent
Spill	spilt R	spilt R
Spin	span, <i>or</i> spun	spun
Spit, <i>be-</i>	spat, <i>or</i> spit	spitten, <i>or</i> spit*
Split	split R	split R
Spreād, <i>be-</i>	spreād	spreād
Spring	sprang, <i>or</i> sprung	sprung
Stand, <i>with- &c.</i>	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stank, <i>or</i> stunk	stunk
Stride, <i>be-</i>	strode, <i>or</i> strid	stridden
Strike	struck	struck, <i>or</i> stricken
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Strew, † <i>be-</i>	strewed	strewed, <i>or</i>
Strow	strowed	strown, strowed
Sweār	swore, <i>or</i> sware	swōrn
Swēat	swēat	swēat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swollen R
Swim	swam, <i>or</i> swum	swum
Swing	swang, <i>or</i> swung	swung
Take, <i>be- &c.</i>	took	taken
Teach, <i>mis- re-</i>	taught	taught
Tear	tore <i>or</i> tare	tōrn
Tell	told	told

* *Spitten* is preferable, though obsolescent.

† *Strew* and *shew* are now giving way to *strow* and *show*, as they are pronounced.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Think, be-	thought	thought
Thrive	throve R	thriven
Throw	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	trod	trodden
Wax	waxed	waxen R
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Weep	wept	wept
Win	won	won
Wind	wound R	wound
Work	wrought R	wrought, worked
Wring	wrung R	wrung
Write	wrote	written

Defective verbs are those which want some of their moods and tenses.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Can,	could,	_____	Shall,	should,	_____
May,	might,	_____	Will,	would,	_____
Must,	must,	_____	Wis,	wist,	_____
Ought,	ought,	_____	Wit or	} wot,	_____
_____	quoth,	_____	Wot,		

EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Name the Past Tense and Past Participle of

Take, drive, creep, begin, abide, buy, bring, arise, catch, bereave, am, burst, draw, drink, fly, flee, fall, get, give, go, feel, forsake, grow, have, hear, hide, keep, know, lose, pay, ride, ring, shake, run, seek, sell, see, sit, slay, slide.

they are

Of ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it; as, Ann speaks *well*; John is *remarkably* diligent.

Adverbs may be divided into classes, viz. :

1. Adverbs of *Time*; as, Ago, already, always, daily, early, hourly, immediately, never, now, presently, sometimes, soon, then, to-day, to-morrow, yesterday.
2. Adverbs of *Place*; as, Above, apart, asunder, backward, below, downward, elsewhere, far, forth, forward, hence, here, hither, near, off, thence, there, thither, up, upward, within, without, yonder.
3. Adverbs of *Number*; as, Once, twice, thrice, first, secondly, again, often.
4. Adverbs of *Quantity*; as, Almost, enough, exceedingly, fully, more, much, most, nearly, so, too, very.
5. Adverbs of *Quality*; as, Badly, cleverly, correctly, how, ill, poorly, quickly, slowly, softly, sweetly, well, wisely.
6. Adverbs of *Affirmation, Negation, and Doubt*; as, Ay, certainly, doubtless, haply, nay, not, nowise, peradventure, perhaps, surely, truly, undoubtedly, yea, yes.

OBSERVATIONS.

Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as adjectives qualify nouns.

In many instances, adverbs admit of degrees of comparison like adjectives. Some are compared by adding *er* and *est*; as, *often, oftener, oftenest*; some by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely*; some are compared irregularly; as, *ill, worse, worst*; *much, more, most*; *well, better, best*.

Most of the adverbs which end in *ly* are formed from adjectives by adding *ly*; as, *foolish, foolishly*; and they are usually compared by prefixing *more* and *most*.

Some adverbs are formed from nouns or adjectives by prefixing *a*, as *a-shore, a-far*.

When *more* and *most* qualify nouns they are *adjectives*; but in every other situation they are *adverbs*.

H
terly
terda
haps
She
catch
have
edly
He is
must
much
can y
fluent
asleep
The s
are al
freely
better

* To do
parts of t
see to-mo
are gover
home? (o
Much is u

In strict
tive; for
be necess
gratitude

† To, be
and accor
the infinit

‡ Enough
like many
should pe

EXERCISES ON ADVERBS.

He went off immediately. I then wept bitterly. He is here now. She went away yesterday.* They came to-day. They will perhaps depart to-morrow. He will soon go away. She sung sweetly. Cats soon know how to catch mice. Maria rose up hastily. They that have enough † may soundly sleep. Cain wickedly slew his brother. I saw him long ago. He is a very good man. Sooner or later all must die. You read too little. They talk too much. Always act wisely. How many lines can you repeat? You ran hastily. He speaks fluently. Then were they happy. He fell fast asleep. She should not hold her head awry. The ship was driven ashore. No, indeed. They are all alike. Those that were thirsty drank freely. The oftener you read attentively, the better you will remember.

OBSERVATIONS.

* *To-day, yesterday, and to-morrow*, are also nouns, for they are parts of time; as, *Yesterday* is past, *to-day* is passing, and we may never see *to-morrow*.—When these words answer to the question *when*, they are governed by a preposition *understood*; as, When will John come home? (on) *to-morrow*, for he went away (on) *yesterday*.

Much is used, 1. as an *adverb*; as, It is *much* better to live well than not.

2. as an *adjective*; as, In *much* wealth is *much* care.

3. as a *noun*; as, When *much* is promised, *much* is expected.

In strict propriety, however, *much* can never be a *noun*, but an *adjective*; for were the question to be asked, *Much what is given?* it would be necessary to add a *noun*, and say, Where *much* *grace* is given, *much gratitude* is required.

† *To*, before the infinitive of verbs, is an *adverb*, according to Johnson, and according to Murray, a *preposition*. The *two* together may be called the *infinitive*.

‡ *Enough* (a sufficiency) is here a *noun*. Its plural, *enoughs*, is applied like *many*, to things that are numbered. *Enough*, an *adj.* like *much*, should perhaps be applied only to things that are weighed or measured.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a word put before nouns and pronouns, to show the relation between them; as, He sailed *from* Leith *to* London *in* two days.

A LIST OF PREPOSITIONS.

To be got accurately by heart.

About, above, across, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, around, at, athwart. Before, behind, below, beneath, beside, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, by. Down, during. Except. For, ^{p. 53, b.} from. In, into. Near, nigh. Of, off, on, over. Round. Save, since. Through, throughout, till, to, towards.* Under, underneath, unto, up, upon, With, within, without.

OBSERVATIONS.

Every preposition requires an objective case after it.—When a preposition does not govern an objective case, it becomes an adverb; as, He rides *about*. But in such phrases as, *cast up, hold out, fall on*, the words *up, out, and on*, must be considered as a part of the verb, rather than as prepositions or adverbs.

Some words are used as prepositions in one place, and as adverbs in another, thus, *before* is a preposition when it refers to *place*; as, He stood *before* the door; and an adverb when it refers to *time*; as, *Before* that the boy called thee, I saw thee. The word *before*, however, and others in similar situations, may still be considered as prepositions, if we supply an appropriate noun; as, *Before* the time that the boy, &c.

* *Towards* is a preposition, but *toward* is an adjective, and means "Ready to do or learn; compliant with duty; not froward." *Toward* is sometimes improperly used for *towards*.

The *inseparable* prepositions are omitted, because an explanation of them can impart no information without a previous knowledge of the radical word. Suppose the pupil told that *con* means *together*, will this explain *convenes* to him? No: he must first be told that *vene* signifies to come, and then *con, together*. Would it not be better to tell him at once that *convenes* means to come or call together?

A
and
go to
Co
which
selec
posit
TH
becau
wher
TH
or, n
TH
but,

Lo
child
but t
as m
Being
care o
may
unless

* Wh
Sever
are in
more
But in
and kno
Somel
as prepo
part, let
Our frien

† As n
more hu
perfectly

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a word which joins words and sentences together; as, You *and* I must go to Leith; *but* Peter may stay at home.

Conjunctions are of three kinds—*Copulative*, which imply addition; *Alternative*, which imply selection; and *Adversative*, which imply opposition.

The Copulative Conjunctions are—And, as, because, for,* if, since, that, until, when, where, whence, whenever, wherever, while, whither.

The Alternative Conjunctions are—Either, or, neither, nor, whether.

The Adversative Conjunctions are—Although, but, lest, than, though, unless, yet.

EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Love your master: for it is your duty. Some children have neither father nor mother alive: but they are, nevertheless, as happy and healthy as many that have both: because the Divine Being has put it into the hearts of others to take care of them. If you study diligently, then you may expect to acquire much knowledge: but unless you study, you cannot know much.

OBSERVATIONS.

* When *for* can be turned into *because*, it is a *conjunction*.

Several words which are marked as adverbs in Johnson's Dictionary are in many Grammars marked as conjunctions; such as, *Albeit, else, moreover, likewise, otherwise, nevertheless, then, therefore, wherefore*.

But in some cases is an *adverb*; as, "We are *but* (only) of yesterday, and know nothing."

Sometimes the same words are used as conjunctions in one place, and as prepositions or adverbs in another place; as, *Since* (conj.) we must part, let us do it peaceably; I have not seen him *since* (prep.) that time. Our friendship commenced long *since* (adv.)†

† As many distinctions, however proper in themselves, may prove more hurtful than useful, they should not be made till the learner be perfectly acquainted with the more obvious facts.

Of INTERJECTIONS.

An *Interjection* is a word which expresses some emotion of the speaker; as, *Oh*, what a sight is here! *Well done!*

A LIST OF INTERJECTIONS.

Adieu! ah! alas! alack! away! aha! begone!
hark! ho! ha! he! hail! halloo! hum! hush!
huzzā! hist! hey-day! lo! O! oh! strange!
O brave! pshaw! see! well-a-day! &c.

CORRECT THE FOLLOWING ERRORS.

I saw a boy which is blind.*	We was not there.†
I saw a flock of geoses.	I loves him.
This is the horse who was lost.	He love me.
This is the hat whom I wear.	Thou have been busy.
John is here, she is a good boy.	He dare not speak.
The heff lays his eggs.	She need not do it.
Jane is here, he reads well.	Was you there?
I saw two mouses.	You was not there.
The dog follows her master.	We was sorry for'it.
This two horses eat hay.	Thou might not go.
John met three mans.	He dost not learn.
We saw two childs.	If I does that.
He has but one teeth.	Thou may do it.
The well is ten foot deep.	You was never there.
Look at the oxes.	The book wgre lost.
This horse will let me ride on her.	Thou will better stop.
I can stay this two hours.	The horses was sold.
I have two pen-knives.	The boys was reading.
My lady has got his fan.	I teaches him grammar.
Two pair of ladies's gloves.	He are not attentive to it.
Henry the Eighth had six wifes.	Thou shall not go out.
I saw the man which sings.	If I bees not at home.
We saw an ass who brayed at us.	Thou can do nothing for me.
They will stay this two days.	There is only two of us, John and you.

* These exercises will at once amuse and improve the pupil. See Syntax, Rules 14 and 15.

† Syntax, Rule 1.

HAV
with
it m
are s
Al
the p
page
mean
so of
on hi
fresh
To
exer
to be
1.
him i
ing c
powe
other
2.
select
they
3.
him p
4.
or pe
tingui
5.
orally
those
6.
give a
tingui
* It i
possible
sulting
sentenc
and ex
the Ex
out clea
Verb an
sive wor
junction

ON PARSING.

HAVING the exercises on Parsing and Syntax in *one* volume with the Grammar, is a *convenience* so exceedingly great, that it must be obvious. The following set of exercises on Parsing are arranged on a plan *new* and important.

All the most material points, and those that are apt to puzzle the pupil, have been selected, and made the subject of a whole page of exercises, and where very important, of two. By this means, the same point must come so often under his eye, and be so often repeated, that it cannot fail to make a deep impression on his mind; and even should he forget it, it will be easy to refresh his memory by turning to it again.

To give full scope to the pupil's discriminating powers, the exercises contain all the parts of speech, promiscuously arranged, to be used thus:

1. After the pupil has got the definition of a noun, exercise him in going over any part of the exercises in parsing, and pointing out the nouns *only*. This will oblige him to exercise his powers of discrimination in distinguishing the nouns from the other words.
2. After getting the definition of an adjectives exercise him in selecting all the *adjectives* from the other words, and telling *why* they are adjectives.
3. After getting all the *pronouns* very accurately by heart, let him point out them, in addition to the nouns and adjectives.
4. Then the *verb*, without telling what *sort*, or what *number*, or *person*, or *tense*, for several weeks, or longer, till he can distinguish it with great readiness.
5. Then the definition of an *adverb*, after which exercise him *orally* with many short sentences containing adverbs, and then on those in the book.
6. Get all the prepositions by heart, for it is impossible to give such a definition of a preposition as will lead a child to distinguish it with certainty, from every other sort of word.*

* It is at the same time desirable to accustom the pupils as early as possible to recognise the parts of speech, not by memory, and not by consulting a dictionary, but by observing their separate functions in the sentence. It will be found very helpful in this respect to take the lessons and exercises in Analysis of Sentences in the Appendix, along with the Exercises on Syntax and Parsing. Analysis, for example, brings out clearly the function of the Noun as the *naming* part of speech, of the Verb as the *asserting* word, of the Adjective and the Adverb as *descriptive* words, of the Preposition as the *phrase-connective*, and of the Conjunction as the *clause-connective*.

7. Get all the conjunctions by heart. They have been alphabetically arranged, like the prepositions, to facilitate the committing of them to memory.

8. After this, the pupil, if very young, may go over all the exercises by parsing every word in the most simple manner; viz. by saying such a word—a *noun, singular*, without telling its *gender and case*—such a word, a *verb*, without telling its *nature, number, person, tense, and mood*.

9. In the next and last course, he should go over the exercises, and tell *every* thing about *nouns and verbs, &c.*, as shown in the example below.

~~See~~ In the Exercises on Parsing, every sentence is numbered in the Grammar; but in the Key, many sentences are not noticed at all, because they are easy.—Under No. a, for instance, the 2d sentence is noticed in the Key, p. 75, but not the 3d, 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th, because there is nothing difficult in any of them.

The small letters refer to the Nos. For example, *p*, in the first sentence of No. a, directs the learner to turn to No. *p*, page 78, and remark that it says, "The verb *to be* or *to have* is often understood," intimating to him by this reference that *to be* is understood after *man* in the first sentence of No. a, and *teaches us* in the second.

A Specimen of Parsing.

O how stupendous was the power,
That raised me with a word;
And every day and every hour,
I lean upon the Lord.

O, an interjection—*how*, an adverb—*stupendous*, an adjective, in the positive degree, compared by *more* and *most*, as, *stupendous, more stupendous, most stupendous*—*was*, a verb, neuter, third pers. singular, past, indicative (*agreeing with its nominative *power*, here put after it)—*the*, an article, the definite—*power*, a noun, singular, neuter, the nominative—*That*, a relative pronoun, singular, neuter, the nominative, here used for *which*; its antecedent is *power*—*raised*, a verb, active, third person, singular, past, indicative (agreeing with its nominative *that*)—*me*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the objective (governed by *raised*)—*with*, a preposition—*a*, an article the indefinite—*word*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (governed by *with*)—*And*, a conjunction—*every*, a distributive adjective—*day*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (because the preposition *through* or *during* is understood)—*and*, and *every*, as before,—*hour*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (because *day* was in it, and conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns, &c.)—*I*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the nominative—*lean*, a verb, neuter, first person, singular, present, indicative—*upon*, a preposition—*the*, an article, the definite—*Lord*, a noun, singular, masc. the obj. (governed by *upon*).—For Construction, see p. 150.

* Omit the words within the () till the pupil get the rules of Syntax.

A fe
A
No

A
mak

to e
joy
Virt
it's

rend
year
Dev
and

An i
Bibl
own
servi

If

passi
will

sense

ties;
acqu

advan
action

and c
The
earth

* Supp
† See

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

A few easy sentences intended as an Exercise chiefly on the *Active Verb*; but to be previously used as an Exercise on Nouns and Adjectives.

No. a.

A good conscience and a contented mind will make a man² happy¹. Philosophy teaches us to endure afflictions, but Christianity^{2*} to enjoy them, by turning them into blessings^{2†}. Virtue ennobles the mind, but vice debases it³. Application in the early period of life renders labour and study easy in succeeding years⁴. True courage fears nothing but sin⁵. Devotion strengthens virtue; calms the temper; and fills the heart with gratitude and praise⁶. An irreligious man dislikes prayer, neglects the Bible, profanes the Sabbath, and prefers his own wicked desires and devices to the will and service of God⁷.

If we give the reins to our appetites and passions, and lay no restraint upon them, they will hurry us into guilt and misery⁸. Good sense stamps a value upon all our other qualities; it teaches us to make a proper use of our acquirements, and to turn our opportunities to advantage: it shows itself in all our words and actions, and in every occurrence of life⁹. Shame and disappointment follow sloth and idleness¹⁰. The darkness, which follows sunset, hides the earth, but reveals the heavens¹¹.

* Supply *teaches us*, as a reference to No. *p* intimates.

† See the ~~☞~~ on the preceding page.—See also Key, p. 75 &c.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Active Verb,—*continued* from last page.

No. a.

Example exerts greater influence than precept¹². Gentleness ought to mark our temper, colour our manners, regulate our speech, and diffuse itself over our whole behaviour¹³. Knowledge makes our being^p pleasant to us, fills the mind with entertaining views, and provides us with sources of perpetual gratification¹⁴. Meekness contrōls our angry passions; candour^p our severe judgments¹⁵. Perseverance in labour will surmount every difficulty¹⁶. He that takes pleasure in the prosperity of others, enjoys part of their good fortune¹⁷. Restlessness of mind disqualifies us both for the enjoyment of peace, and for the performance of duty¹⁸. Sadness contracts the mind; mirth dilates it¹⁹.

We should subject our fancies to the government of reason²⁰. Self-conceit, presumption, and obstinacy, blast the prospects of many a youth²¹. Mere affluence may give^{r2} us importance in the eyes of the vulgar; but it will not recommend us to the wise and good²². A man of cheerful temper brings sunshine with him wherever he comes; a querulous man creates discontent, and makes others as cross as himself²³. Many lose their labour, because they do not prosecute to the end the good work which they have begun²⁴. Envy and wrath shorten life; and anxiety bringeth age before its time²⁵. Men do not gather grapes of thorns, nor figs of thistles²⁶.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Neuter Verb, including the verb *To be*.

No. 6.

It is better to live on a little¹ than to outlive² a great deal¹. A good education is a better inheritance than a great estate². It would be well for some men, if they were penniless³. Friendship can scarcely exist where virtue is not the foundation⁴. He that¹ swells in prosperity, will shrink in adversity⁵. He who despairs of good is sure to fall into evil⁶. From idleness arises⁷ neither pleasure nor advantage: we must flee therefore from idleness², the certain parent of guilt and ruin⁷.

You must not always rely on promises⁸. The peace of society dependeth on the due administration of law and justice⁹. He that walketh with wise men shall be wise¹⁰. He that¹ sitteth with the profane is foolish¹¹. The coach arrives daily¹². The mail travels fast¹³. Rain falls in great abundance here¹⁴. He sleeps soundly¹⁵. She dances gracefully¹⁶. I went to York¹⁷. He lives soberly¹⁸. He hurried to his house in the country¹⁹. They smiled²⁰. She laughed²¹. He that¹ liveth in pleasure is dead while he liveth²². To a lover of truth nothing appears to be^m so low and mean as lying and dissimulation²³. Vice is its own punishment, and virtue is its own reward²⁴. Industry is the road to wealth, and virtue² to happiness²⁵. A message flies with the speed of lightning along the telegraphic wires²⁶.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Passive Verb.—See Page 38, *bottom*.

No. c.

An accomplished man is admired; an amiable man is loved¹. You may be deprived of rank and riches against your will; but^p not of virtue without your consent². Bad habits should be amended, and good ones acquired³. Many are brought to ruin by extravagance and dissipation⁴. The best designs are often ruined by unnecessary delay⁵. Only such recreations should be pursued as are innocent and healthful⁶. Almost all difficulties may be overcome by diligence⁷. Old friends are preserved and new ones are procured by a grateful disposition⁸. Words are like arrows, and should not be shot at random⁹.

A desire to be thought learned* is characteristic of the smatterer rather than of the true scholar¹⁰. Great merit is sometimes concealed under the most unpromising appearances¹¹. Some talents are buried in the earth, and others are properly employed¹². Much mischief has often been prevented by timely consideration¹³. True pleasure cannot be tasted by the wicked; it is only to be found in the paths of virtue¹⁴. That† friend is highly to be valued at all times, whose friendship is shown in the time of our adversity¹⁵.

* *Learned* here, is an *adjective*; and should be pronounced *learn-ed* in two syllables; but when a *verb*, in one.

† Concerning *that*, see Notes p. 19 and *Key*, No. 90 p. 45.

B
inwa
rewa
shou
vate
him
offer
any
The
with
eat^a
the
that
right
G
own
hond
good
the
were
allot
for s
be r
ship
crew
in t
join
the t
wher
not s

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Passive Verb,—*continued.*

No. c.

Benevolence is accompanied with such an inward satisfaction, that the duty is sufficiently rewarded by the performance¹⁶. The mind should be stored with knowledge, and^p cultivated with care¹⁷. A pardon was obtained for him from the king¹⁸. Sanguine prospects have often been blasted¹⁹. Too sanguine hopes of any earthly thing should never be entertained²⁰. The table of Dionysius the tyrant was loaded with delicacies of every kind, yet he could not eat^a ²¹. We are taught in the Scriptures that the afflictions of this life will be overpaid by that eternal weight of glory which awaits the righteous^a ²².

Greater courage is displayed in ruling one's own spirit than in taking a city²³. Riches and honour have not always been reserved for the good²⁴. King Alfred is said to have divided the day and night into three parts: eight hours were allotted for meals and sleep, eight were allotted for business and recreation, and eight^p for study and devotion²⁵. All our actions should be regulated by religion and reason²⁶. The ship would have been swamped, and the whole crew lost, if the leak had not been discovered in time²⁷. These two things cannot be disjoined; a holy life and a happy death²⁸. As the thermometer cannot indicate temperature, when the mercury is frozen; so conscience cannot show us our duty, when hardened by sin²⁹.

EXERCISES

On different sorts of Verb in the Imperative.

No. *d*.

Forget the faults of others, and remember your own¹. Study universal rectitude, and cherish religious hope². Suit your desires to things, and not things to your desires³. Never lie, nor steal, nor covet, but always follow the law of truth, of integrity, and of contentment⁴. Practise humility, and avoid everything in dress, carriage, or conversation, which has any appearance of pride⁵. Allow nothing to interrupt your public or private devotions, except the performance of some humane action⁶.

Learn to condemn all praise betimes,
For* flattery is the nurse of crimes⁷.

Recollect that you are a member of the human family; and deem nothing which^a regards humanity unworthy of your notice⁸. Presume^b not in prosperity, and despair^b not in adversity⁹. Be kind and courteous to all, and never either give or take offence without just reason¹⁰. Beware^b of the beginnings of evil habits; they creep^b upon us insidiously, and often become our masters before we are aware¹¹.

Oh man, degenerate man, offend no more!
Go† learn of brutes, thy Maker to adore¹²!

Let no one persuade you that the work of preparation for heaven is inconsistent with an honourable discharge of the duties of active life¹³. Let your words‡ agree with your thoughts, and let both be ruled by the law of the Lord¹⁴.

* See Note First, p. 53.

† Go and learn are both in the imperative.—‡ See Note, next page.

On
I
frien
con
you
and
tion
L
you
of
heav
cour
her
need
I fee
hold
hast
A
M
A
Be n
good
sun
* Th
obser
"The
-I hav
the cou
ay-st
Sen

EXERCISES

On different sorts of Verb in the Imperative,—*continued.**

No. d.

Let the favour of God be preferred to the friendship of men, and the testimony of a good conscience to the applause of the world.¹⁵ Let your first waking thoughts be given to God; and let no evening close without a devout oblation of prayer and thanksgiving¹⁶.

Let no opposition or obloquy from men make you* swerve from your duty to God; the frowns of the world are nothing to the smiles of heaven¹⁷. Let reason go before enterprise, and counsel before every action¹⁸. Hear Ann read her lesson¹⁹. Bid her get it better²⁰. You need† not hear her again²¹. I see her weep²². I feel it pain me²³. I dare not go²⁴. You behold him run²⁵. We observed him walk off hastily²⁶.

And that tongue of his, that bade the Romans Mark* him, and write his speeches in their books, Alas! it cried—give^{r 2} me some drink, Titinius²⁷.

Deal with another as you'd have
Another* deal with you;
What' you're unwilling to receive,
Be sure you never do²⁸.

Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.²⁹ Be angry and sin not, let not the sun go down upon your wrath³⁰.

* The next verb after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, let, behold, observe, have, and know*, is in the *Infinitive*, having to understood: as, "The tempest-loving raven scarce dares (to) wing the dubious dusk."—I have *known* him (to) *divert* the money, &c. *To* is often used after the compound tenses of these verbs; as, Who will dare to advance, if I say—stop? Them did he make to pay tribute.

† Sent. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, and 26, have no Imperative in them.

EXERCISES.

The Nominative, though generally placed *before* the verb, is often placed *after* it; especially when the sentence begins with *Here, there, &c.*, when *if* or *though* is understood, and when a *question* is asked.

No. e.

Of all burdens the heaviest is a guilty conscience¹. Among the best and most healthful sports, may be reckoned bowls, curling, golf, and cricket; among the most dangerous, football and boating². Then were they in great fear³. Here stands the oak⁴. On the heels of folly treadeth shame, and at the back of anger standeth remorse⁵. Then shall thy light break forth as the morning⁶. Then shalt thou see clearly⁷. Where is thy brother⁸? Is he at home⁹?

There are in most of our great towns hundreds who can neither read nor write¹⁰. Were he at leisure, I would wait-upon him¹¹. Had he been more prudent, he would have been more fortunate¹². Were they wise, they would read the Scriptures daily¹³. I would give more¹⁴ to the poor were I able¹⁴. Could we survey the chambers of sickness and distress, we should find them¹⁵ peopled, in very many instances, with the victims of intemperance, sensuality, and self-indulgence¹⁵. Were he to assert it, I would not believe it, because he told a lie before¹⁶. Gaming is a vice¹⁷ pregnant with the greatest evils; to it are often sacrificed health, reputation, and everything virtuous and valuable¹⁷. Is not industry the road to wealth, and¹⁸ virtue¹⁸ to wellbeing¹⁸?

The
Ja
stea
fits o
rema
That
that e
that i
temp
gold
theres
It
mean
look
schoo
home
in the
dain,
dust
talent
race o
tion i
vanta
shall
emplo
looks
lish th
H
S
O
W
W
M

EXERCISES.

The Nominative is often at a great distance from the verb.

No. f.

James Watt, who, by his invention of the steam-engine, conferred such inestimable benefits on his country and the world, was a man as remarkable for his modesty as for his genius¹. That fortitude^e which has encountered no dangers, that energy which has surmounted no difficulties, that integrity which has never been exposed to temptation,—can at best be considered but as gold not yet^e brought to the test, of which, therefore, the true value cannot be assigned².

It is quite possible that that little boy, so mean in his attire, and so peasant-like in his look and manners, whom his richer and gayer schoolmates despise for his humble birth and homely aspect; seldom inviting him to share in their sports, and often treating him with disdain, and even with rudeness, as if he were the dust beneath their feet, may, by his superior talents and diligence, outstrip all of them in the race of learning, and ultimately rise to a position in society, which they, with all their advantages of birth, and wealth, and patronage, shall be unable to reach³. He whose constant employment is detraction and censure; who looks only to find faults, and speaks only to prolish them; will be dreaded, hated, and avoided⁴.

He^e, who through vast immensity can pierce,
 See worlds on worlds¹* compose one universe,
 Observe how system into system runs,
 What²* other planets circle other suns,
 What varied being peoples every star,
 May tell why Heaven has made us as we are³.

EXERCISES.

The infinitive, or part of a sentence, being equal to a noun, is often the nominative to a verb.

No. 9.

To be ashamed of a course of life which¹ conscience approves from a fear of the censure of the world,² is the mark of a feeble and imperfect character¹. To bear ill usage with meekness, and misfortune with equanimity, bespeaks true nobility of soul². To rejoice in the welfare of our fellow-creatures, is, in a degree, to partake of their good fortune; but to repine at their prosperity, is only to punish ourselves, and prove how unworthy we are of the success which we envy³.

To eat bread in the sweat of his face, till he return unto the ground out of which he was taken, is part of the doom entailed on man by the fall⁴. To satisfy all his wishes, is the way to make your child⁵ truly miserable⁵. To practise virtue is the sure way to love it⁶. To be at once merry and malicious, is the sign of a corrupt heart and a weak understanding⁷. To love them who love us is commendable; but to love our enemies, and do good to them that hate us, is the height of wisdom⁸. To instruct the ignorant, relieve the needy, and comfort the afflicted †, are duties which it is at once a privilege and a pleasure to perform⁹. To dread no eye, and suspect no tongue, is¹⁰ † the prerogative of innocence¹⁰.

* When nothing but an infinitive precedes the verb, then it is the infinitive that is the nominative to it: as, *To play* is pleasant. But when the infinitive has any *adjuncts*, as in the sentence, *To drink poison* is death, it is the whole clause that forms the nominative; for it is not *to drink* that is death; but *to drink poison*.

† Two or more infinitives usually require a verb in the plural. See also R. 18. b.†

Usual
who
clos
eith

TI
long
with
sigh
the
misfo
to vi
Bew
self-r
not a
lumin
cours
W
which
make
has o
the li
ing,
steam
fluenc
the s
most
TI
W

* An
tween
rule; fo
verb, is

† Sap,
whica.

EXERCISES.

Usually the relative *which* or *that* is the nominative to the verb, when it stands immediately before the verb.—When not close to the verb, it is usually in the objective, and governed either by the verb that comes *after* it, or by a preposition.*

No. *h*.

The lesson which you get with difficulty is longer remembered than that which you learn with ease¹. The veil which covers from our sight the sorrows of future years, is a veil^o which the hand of mercy has woven². Most of the misfortunes that befall us in life may be traced to vices or follies which we have committed³. Beware^d of those sins in youth which cause self-reproach in riper years⁴. True charity is not a meteor which occasionally glances, but a luminary which,* in its orderly and regular course, dispenses a benignant influence⁵.

We usually find that to be the sweetest fruit, which the birds have pecked⁶. Nothing can make that ²great, which the decree of nature has ordained to be little⁷. The force that raises the lid of the tea-kettle, when the water is boiling, is the same which propels the mightiest steamship⁸. True religion will show its influence in every part of our conduct; it is like the sap† of a living tree, which pervades the most distant boughs⁹.

There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune¹⁰.

* An *adverb* or a *clause* between *two commas*, frequently comes between the relative and the verb.—The rule at the top is but a *general rule*; for in Poetry, in particular, the *Relative*, though not close to the verb, is sometimes in the *nominative*.—See first line of Poetry, page 66.
† *Sap*, the *obj.* governed by *to* understood after *like*, and antecedent to *which*.

EXERCISES.

When the antecedent and relative are *both* in the *nominative*, the relative is generally the *nominative* to the verb *next* it, and the antecedent is generally the *nominative* to the *second* verb.

No. i.

He who performs every part of his business in its due place and season, suffers no part of time to escape without profit¹. He that does good for its own sake, seeks neither praise nor reward, though he is sure of both at the last². He that commends a wicked action, is equally guilty with him that commits it³. He that overcomes his passions, conquers his greatest enemies⁴. The consolation which is derived from a reliance upon Providence, enables us to support the most severe misfortunes⁵.

In our climate, fruit-trees which blossom late are surer to repay the gardener's care than those which blossom early⁶. The same sun that shone on your cradle, will shine on your grave⁷. A wrong which is inflicted on us unintentionally, leaves no room for resentment⁸. The objects which we most value, are not always those which are most valuable⁹. The impressions which we receive in youth are always deeper and more lasting than those of after-life¹⁰. Persons who are ingenuous and kind hearted in youth, but become selfish, morose, and miserly in old age, may be not unfitly likened to those mountains which have a carpet of verdure and flowers at their base, while their summit is covered with ice and snow¹¹.

What
sent
two
and
is an

Re
of wh
what
charg
belon
custo
ish m
loa t
eyes
rather
diffic

W
Atten
to do
part o
under
ing r
gave
at in t
he utt

* What
"many
What
thinking

EXERCISES.

What is equal to—*that which*—or *the thing which*—and represents *two* cases;—sometimes *two nominatives*;—sometimes *two objectives*;—sometimes a *nominative* and an *objective*;—and sometimes an *objective* and a *nominative*.—Sometimes it is an *adjective*.

No. *j*.

Regard the quality, rather than the quantity of what you read¹. If we delay till to-morrow what ought to be done to-day, ^{p. 51, b.} we overcharge the to-morrow with a burden which belongs not to it². Choose what is most fit: custom will make it the most agreeable³. Foolish men are more apt to consider what they have lost than what they possess, and to turn their eyes on those who are richer than themselves, rather than on those who are under greater difficulties⁴.

What cannot be cured, must be endured⁵. Attend to what you are about, and take pains to do it well⁶. *What a dolt not to know what part of speech *what* is⁷! Mark Antony, when under adverse circumstances, made this interesting remark, "I have lost all, except what I gave away⁸." Mark what it is his mind aims at in the question, and not merely what* words⁹ he utters⁹.

By what* means shall I obtain wisdom?

See what* a grace was seated on his brow¹⁰!

* *What* here, and generally in questions, is an adjective, like many in "many a flower." Sometimes it is an *Interjection*, as, *What!*

What is sometimes used as an *adverb* for *partly*: thus, *What* with thinking, *what* with writing, and *what* with reading, I am weary.

EXERCISES.

The compound relatives,—*whoever* and *whosoever*—are equal to *—he who.*—See also page 18, last note.

Whatever and *whatsoever* are equal to—*the thing which*,—and, like *what* on the preceding page, represent two cases.

No. *k.*

Whatever gives pain to your neighbour, ought to cause pain to yourself¹. Whoever tells you your faults from a desire for your amendment, is your true friend and benefactor². Whatsoever is good, that you should do³. Wherever you are, and in *whatever circumstances you are placed, remember that the eye of God is upon you⁴. Whosoever committeth sin, transgresseth also the law; for sin is the transgression of the law⁵. Whatever is worth doing, is worth doing well⁶.

* By whatever arts you may at first attract the attention, you can hold the esteem, and secure the hearts of others, only by amiable dispositions, and the accomplishments of the mind⁷.

Whatever brawls disturb the street,
There should be peace at home⁸.

Good advice, by whomsoever given, should be thankfully followed; and enticements to evil should be strenuously resisted, whatever the attractions of the enticer⁹. *Whatever insult you receive, try to bear it meekly: revenge it in no circumstances whatever¹⁰.

* *Whatever* is an adjective here, for it qualifies arts, &c.; and where no noun is after it, it agrees with *thing* understood. Thus, *Whatever* may be the motive, &c., that is, *Whatever thing* may be.

Do, a
ver
ver

H
ised
ness
of m
virtu
Tho
the
agai
do y
tell
Did
I do
is th
the r
long
what
dom
Pr
the r
afflic
allev
given
passi
well
I hav
quest

* Hav
have th

EXERCISES.

Do, did, have, had, are auxiliary verbs when joined to another verb; when not joined to another verb, they are principal verbs, and, like the verb *to love*, have auxiliaries.

No. 7.

He who does not perform what he has promised, is a traitor to his friend¹. Earthly happiness does not flow from riches; but from content of mind, health of body, and a life of piety and virtue². Fine clothes do not make a gentleman³. Though you have not yet succeeded in taking the prize, do not be discouraged from trying again⁴. If you have not done all you could, why do you wonder at your failure⁵? John did not tell me that he had gained the gold medal⁶. Did you see my book⁷? Do you go to-morrow⁸? I do not think it⁹ proper to play too long⁹. What is this that thou hast done¹⁰? Had they studied the map, they might have saved themselves a long journey¹¹. Do not lightly throw away what you have gained with difficulty¹². Wisdom does not make a man¹³ proud¹³.

Principal.—He who does the most good,* has the most pleasure¹⁴. Instead of adding to the afflictions of others, do whatever¹⁵ you can to alleviate them¹⁵. To him that hath shall be given¹⁶. If thou canst do anything, have¹⁷ compassion on us, and help¹⁷ us¹⁷. He did his work well¹⁸. Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee¹⁹. Did you do what I requested you to do²⁰?

* *Have, hast, has, hath, had, and hadst,* are auxiliaries only when they have the Past Participle of another verb after them.

EXERCISES.

The verb *to be* has very often an *adjective* after it; and some adjectives seem so closely combined with it, as to lead young people to suppose that they have got a passive verb.

No. m.

Piety and rectitude are productive of true peace and comfort¹. If the powers of the mind were duly cultivated,* mankind would at all times be able to derive pleasure from their own breasts, as rational as it is exalted². Learning is preferable to riches; but virtue is preferable to both³. Men who are severe in judging themselves are usually charitable to the faults of others⁴. We were all afraid of the lions⁵: for we heard them^{2d*} roar⁶. A man may be well instructed without being also instructive⁷.

Although ten were eligible, only one was chosen⁸. To study without intermission is impossible: relaxation is necessary; but it should be moderate⁹. The Athenians were conceited on account of their own wit, science, and politeness¹⁰. We are indebted to our ancestors for our civil and religious liberty¹¹. Gold would be less valued, if it were more abundant¹². An idle person is a kind of monster in the creation, because all nature is busy about him¹³. Be careful to speak with reverence of all that is sacred¹⁴. He was unfortunate, because he was inconsiderate¹⁵. He who is self-confident is less likely to excel than he who is conscious of his deficiencies¹⁶. I am ashamed of you¹⁷. She is quite forlorn¹⁸.

* Were cultivated, a verb passive.

1.
Preser
2.
Adjec
that.

1.
ing
spee
hear
been
& let
She
We
ther
learn
be b
day¹

2.
good
Tho
obst
who
unde
able
the s
but
dilig
Of a
Som
activ

EXERCISES.

1. Active and neuter verbs are often conjugated with their *Present Participle*, joined to the verb *to be*.*

2. A noun is always understood, when not expressed, after *Adjectives*, and *Adjective Pronouns*: such as, *few*, *many*, *this*, *that*, *all*, *each*, *very*, *either*.—See p. 147, under *They*, *those*.

No. n.

1. While I am reading, you should be listening to what I read¹. He was delivering his speech when I left the house². They have been hearing a lecture on botany³. He might have been preparing his lesson⁴. I have been writing a letter, and I am just going to send it away⁵. She was walking by herself when I met her⁶. We are perishing with hunger; I am willing therefore to surrender⁷. We should always be learning⁸. A good man is always studying to be better⁹. We were playing at cricket yesterday¹⁰.

2. Those only are truly great who are really good¹¹. Few set a proper value on their time¹². Those who⁴ despise the admonitions of their friends, deserve the mischiefs which³ their own obstinacy brings upon them¹³. Of the many who contended for the prize, most were quite undeserving of it, and only a few made a tolerable appearance, though each expected to be the successful competitor¹⁴. Love no interests but those of truth and virtue¹⁵. Such as are diligent will be rewarded¹⁶. I saw a thousand¹⁷. Of all prodigality, that of time is the worst¹⁸. Some are naturally timid; and some bold and active; for all are not alike¹⁹.

* Many words both in *ing* and *ed* are mere adjectives.

EXERCISES.

The *Past Participle* has uniformly either a relative or personal pronoun, with some part of the verb *to be*, understood before it.*

No. 0.

Make the study of the sacred Scriptures² your daily practice and concern; and embrace the doctrines contained in them, as the real oracles of Heaven, and the dictates of that Spirit that cannot lie¹. Knowledge softened with modesty and good breeding, will make a man beloved and admired². Gratitude and thanks are the least returns which children can make to their parents for the numberless obligations conferred on them³. Precepts have little influence when not enforced by example⁴. He is of all human beings the happiest, who has a conscience untainted† by guilt, and a mind so well regulated† as to be able to accommodate itself to whatever the wisdom of Heaven shall think fit to or ain⁵. Mere external beauty is of little estimation; and deformity, when associated with amiable dispositions and useful qualities, does not preclude our respect and approbation⁶. True honour, as defined by Cicero, is the concurrent approbation of good men⁷. Modesty seldom resides in a breast not enriched with nobler virtues⁸.

* It is often difficult to supply the *right* part of the verb *to be*. An *adverb* is often understood. The *scope* of the passage must determine what part of *to be*, and what *adverb*, when an *adv.* is necessary, should be supplied: for no general rule for this can be given.

† The *Past Tense* has always a *nom.* either expressed or easily understood: but the *Past Part.* has no *Nom.* → See *Key*, p. 81. No. 168.

‡ *Untainted* and *regulated* are adjectives here.

AN
appe
he re
nitue
less⁹.
cond
and
the e

T
A
H
C
S
A
A
E
E

W
has
that
Brita
count
by i
labou
impr
mean

* Saw
† In
Partic
finite
follows
See Syn

EXERCISES.

On the Past Participle,—*continued* from last page.

No. 8.

An elevated genius, employed in little things, appears like the sun in his evening declination; he remits his splendour, but retains his magnitude; and pleases more, though he dazzles less⁹. Economy, prudently and temperately conducted, is the safeguard of many virtues; and is, in a particular manner, favourable to the exercise of benevolence¹⁰.

The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
And fortune smiled deceitful² on her birth,
For, in her helpless years, deprived of all,
Of every stay, save* innocence and Heaven,
She, with her widow'd mother, feeble, old,
And poor, lived in a cottage, far retired
Among the windings of a woody vale;
By solitude and deep surrounding shades,
But more by bashful modesty concealed¹¹.

We find man^p placed † in a world where he has by no means the disposal of the events that happen¹². Protected by its wooden walls, Britain is safer from invasion than many a country which has its whole frontier barricaded by impregnable fortresses¹³. Children often labour more to have the words in their books † imprinted on their memories, than to have the meaning † fixed in their minds¹⁴.

* *Save* may be considered a *preposition* here.—See *Key*, No. 140.

† In many cases, the infinitive *to be*, is understood before the Past Participle. Though the verb that follows *have*, *does*, &c., is in the Infinitive, *to* is inadmissible, and where *to* is inadmissible, the *be* that follows it is inadmissible also.—Man *to be* placed—Means *to be* left, &c. See *Syn.* R. 8.

EXERCISES.

Supply all the words that are *understood*. The infinitive *to be* or *to have*, is often understood.—Not supplying what is understood after *than* and *as*, is frequently the cause of error.

No. *p.*

Disdain^d every form of falsehood, nor allow even the image of deceit a place in your mind¹. Some who seem born only to serve others rise by their integrity and fidelity to places of command; and some who commence life with all the advantages of birth and fortune, forfeit their position by their vices, and find themselves reduced in after-life to servitude or beggary². They lost their mother when very young³.

For contemplation he, and valour formed;

For softness she, and sweet attractive grace⁴.

Is not her husband elder than she⁵? Thy brother is a more diligent student than thou⁶. We were earlier at church than they⁷. I have more to do than he⁸. He is as diligent as his brother⁹. I love you as well as him¹⁰. How opposite in their worldly circumstances were these two—Dives and Lazarus—the one rich, the other poor; the one clothed in purple and fine linen, the other in rags; the one faring sumptuously every day, the other desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table; yet, though Dives in his lifetime received his good things, and Lazarus evil things the latter had really the better portion, and the former the worse; for in the world beyond the grave the beggar was to be comforted, and the rich man tormented¹¹.

1. Th
is often
2. So
be sup

1.
best
reflec
make
flowe
the fl
to lov
bad f
our f
we d
their
fortun
the v
regul
She s
write
that y

There
from
or vir

I exp
tion i
and r

EXERCISES.

1. The objective after an active verb, especially when a relative, is often understood.
2. Sometimes the antecedent is omitted, and must in parsing be supplied.

No. 9.

1. He that moderates his desires, enjoys the best happiness this world can afford¹. Few reflections are more distressing than those we make on our own ingratitude². The modest flower we overlook is often more fragrant than the flaunting one we admire³. It is not easy to love those we do not esteem⁴. Our good or bad fortune depends on the choice we make of our friends⁵. Over-anxiety to avoid the evils we dread only makes us a broader mark for their sharp arrows; and not a few of our misfortunes are brought on, or at least accelerated, by the very means we use to avert them⁶. He eats regularly, drinks moderately, and reads often⁷. She sees and hears distinctly, but she cannot write⁸. Lay up a part of what you daily acquire, that you may have to give to him that is poor⁹.

2. There are in this loud stunning tide
Of human care and crime,
With whom the melodies abide
Of the everlasting chime¹⁰.

There have been that have delivered themselves from their misfortunes by their good conduct or virtue¹¹.

- Who live to nature rarely can be poor;
Who live to fancy rarely can be rich¹².
Who steals my purse steals trash¹³.

I expect you to make progress in your education in proportion to the advantages you have, and not according to those you have¹⁴.

EXERCISES.

1. The objective generally comes *after* the verb that governs it: but always when it is a *relative*, and often in other instances, it comes *before* it.

2. When two objectives follow a verb, the *thing* is governed by the *verb*, and the *person* by a *preposition* understood.

No. r.

1. Me ye have bereaved of my children¹. Them that serve me faithfully I will reward². Mine* offence I trust you will forgive³. Him whom ye recommend I shall prefer⁴. Those that kindly reprov'd you, ye basely insulted⁵. Those who have laboured to make us wise and good, are the persons whom we ought particularly to love and respect⁶. Whom having not seen ye love⁷. Those curiosities we have imported from China; these from Japan⁸. The two letters I now give you are letters of introduction:—this you may send by post; that you must deliver in person⁹.

2. Give him bread¹⁰. Give her her due¹¹. Who gave you that book¹²? My father has sent me a valuable present¹³. Friend,† lend me thy horse¹⁴. Give her assistance¹⁵. Buy me a pair of globes¹⁶. Teach thy sister the alphabet¹⁷. Sell me meat for money¹⁸. I will send you corn¹⁹. Tell me thy name²⁰. He taught me grammar²¹. If any of thy friends offend thee, tell him his fault, and try to convince him of it²². Bring me a candle²³. Get him a pen²⁴. Write him a letter²⁵. Tell me nothing but the truth²⁶.

* Mine, used here for my, as thine is for thy. See *Observations*, p. 17.

† Friend is the nominative, for he is named. Supply the ellipsis thus *O thou who art my friend, lend me, &c.*

1. T
join a
2. T
3. T
somel

1. A
—
T
A
H
U
O
T
2. T
A
T
A
W
T
I
W
T
T
I
E
P
3. B

• T
be, "E
all cir
and th
mar, m

EXERCISES.

1. The poets often use an *adjective* as a *noun*; and sometimes join an *adjective* to their new-made noun.
2. They sometimes improperly use an *adjective* for an *adverb*.
3. Though the adjective generally comes *before* the noun, it is sometimes placed *after* it.

No. s.

1. And where He *vital* breathes there must be joy¹.
 — Who shall attempt with wandering feet
 The dark, unbottom'd, infinite abyss,
 And through the *palpable* OBSCURE find out
 His uncouth way, or spread his aery flight,
 Upborne with indefatigable wings,
 Over the *vast* ABRUPT, ere he arrive*
 The happy isle²? — *Paradise Lost*, b. ii. 404.
2. Thus Adam his illustrious guest besought:
 And thus the god-like angel answer'd *mild*³.
 The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
 And fortune smiled *deceitful* on her birth⁴.
 When even at last the solemn hour shall come
 To wing my mystic flight⁵ to future worlds,
 I *cheerful* will obey; there, with new powers,
 Will rising wonders sing⁵.
 The rapid radiance *instantaneous* strikes
 The illumined mountain⁶. — *Gradual* sinks the
 Into a perfect calm⁷. [breeze
 Each animal, conscious of some danger, fled
Precipitate the loath'd abode of man⁸.
3. But I lose myself in Him, in light *ineffable*⁹.
 — Pure serenity apace
 Induces thought and contemplation *still*¹⁰.

* The poets often very improperly omit the *preposition*. It should be, "Ere he arrive *at* the happy isle." And again, "Here he had need all circumspection," for, need *of* all circumspection.

† After this, the Preface, the Exercises on Punctuation, p. 159, and the Figures of Speech, p. 172, with many other parts of the Grammar, may be used as additional exercises on Parsing.

*A short Explanation of some of the Terms used
in the Grammar.*

<i>Abbreviation</i> , shortening.	<i>Negative</i> , no, denying.
<i>Affirmative</i> , yes, asserting.	<i>Nominative</i> , naming.
<i>Ambiguity</i> , double meaning.	<i>Objective</i> , applied to the case which follows an active verb or a preposition.
<i>Anneæd</i> , joined to.	<i>Obsolete</i> , gone out of use.
<i>Antecedent</i> , the word going before.	<i>Obsolescent</i> , growing out of use.
<i>Auxiliary</i> , helping.	<i>Omit</i> , to leave out, not to do.
<i>Cardinal</i> ,* principal, or fundamental.	<i>Ordinal</i> ,† numbered in their order.
<i>Comparative</i> , a higher or lower degree of a quality.	<i>Paradigm</i> , example.
<i>Comparison</i> , a comparing of qualities.	<i>Participle</i> , partaking of other parts.
<i>Conjugate</i> , to give all the principal parts of a verb.	<i>Past</i> , the time past.
<i>Contingency</i> , what may or may not happen; casualty, accident.	<i>Perfect</i> , completed, finished, past.
<i>Defective</i> , wanting some of its parts.	<i>Personal</i> , belonging to persons.
<i>Demonstrative</i> , pointing out.	<i>Pluperfect</i> , more than perfect, quite finished some time ago.
<i>Disjunctive</i> , disjoining.	<i>Plurality</i> , more than one.
<i>Distributive</i> , dividing into portions.	<i>Possessive</i> , possessing, belonging to.
<i>Ellipsis</i> , a leaving out of something.	<i>Positive</i> , the quality without excess.
<i>Euphony</i> , an agreeable sound.	<i>Potential</i> , having power, or will.
<i>Future</i> , } time to come.	<i>Preceding</i> , going before.
<i>Futurity</i> , } time to come.	<i>Prefixing</i> , placing before.
<i>Governs</i> , rules or acts upon.	<i>Present</i> , the time that now is.
<i>Imperative</i> , commanding.	<i>Promiscuous</i> , mixed.
<i>Indefinite</i> , undefined, not limited.	<i>Query</i> , question.
<i>Indicative</i> , declaring, indicating.	<i>Regular</i> , according to rule.
<i>Infinitive</i> , without limits.	<i>Relative</i> , relating to another.
<i>Interrogative</i> , asking.	<i>Subjunctive</i> , joined to another under a condition.
<i>Intervens</i> , to come between.	<i>Superlative</i> , the highest or lowest degree of a quality.
<i>Intransitive</i> (action), confined to the actor; passing within.	<i>Tense</i> , time of being, acting, or suffering.
<i>Irrregular</i> , not according to rule.	<i>Transitive</i> , passing to an object.
<i>Miscellaneous</i> , mixed, of various kinds.	<i>Unity</i> , one—several acting as one.
<i>Mood</i> , form or manner of a verb.	<i>Universal</i> , extending to all.

* The *Cardinal numbers* are, One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, &c.; from the first three are formed the adverbs *once, twice, thrice*.

† The *Ordinal numbers* are, First, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c.

From these come *adverbs of order*; as, *Firstly, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, sixthly, seventhly, eighthly, ninthly, tenthly, eleventhly, twelfthly, thirteenthly, fourteenthly, fifteenthly, sixteenthly, seventeenthly, eighteenthly, nineteenthly, twentiethly, twenty-firstly, twenty-secondly, &c.*

SYNT
con
A
comp
Se
A
and c
A
simpl
conju
is lon
A
press
affirm
with
Th
the s
verb),
Th
cate in
object

* Synt
Concor
ber, gen
Govern
in detern
† Fini
Infinitive
‡ The
APPEND

SYNTAX:

SYNTAX treats of the proper arrangement and construction of words in sentences.*

A sentence is an assemblage of words making complete sense; as, *God made the world.*

Sentences are either simple or compound.

A *simple* sentence contains but one subject and one finite† verb; as, *Life is short.*

A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Time is short, BUT eternity is long.*

A *phrase* is two or more words used to express a certain relation between ideas, without affirming any thing; as, *In truth; to be plain with you.*

The principal parts of a simple sentence‡ are, the *subject* (or nominative), the *predicate* (or verb), and the *object*.

The *subject* is the thing spoken of; the *predicate* is the thing affirmed or denied; and the *object* is the thing acted upon by the subject.

* Syntax principally consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Government*. *Concord* is the agreement which one word has with another, in number, gender, case, or person.

Government is that power which one part of speech has over another in determining its mood, tense, or case.

† *Finite* verbs are those to which number and person appertain. The *Infinitive* mood has no respect to number or person.

‡ The subject of "Analysis of Sentences" is treated fully in the APPENDIX, p. 181.

RULE I. *A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, Thou readest; he reads; we read.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The birds sing sweetly.* Thou art the man. Of the metals platinum is the heaviest, gold the most prized, iron the most useful. The train of my ideas was interrupted. Almost thou persuaded me to be a Christian. In spring the ice melts and the fields become green. The number of pupils that attend our school has greatly increased since last vacation.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I loves reading. I is going to London. A clear and approving conscience make an easy man. There remains three things more to be considered. His conduct in public and private life entitle him to the esteem of his friends. By good conduct thou might engage fortune on thy side. Frequent commission of crimes harden the heart. The Pyramids of Egypt has stood more than three thousand years. A judicious arrangement of studies facilitate improvement. A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye. Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits delight some persons.
 † Him and her were of the same age.

* Example of Construction:—The *birds sing*, a verb agrees with its nominative. *Thou art*, a verb agrees with its nominative.—See first note, next page; also full example of Construction, p. 120.

† Rule. *An adjective agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case; as, A good man.*—As the adjective, in English, is not varied on account of gender, number, and case, this rule is of little importance.

‡ Rule. *The subject of a verb should be in the nominative:* Thus, *Him and her were married*; should be, *He and she were married.*

§ All those Notes at the bottom that have Exercises in the text are to be committed to memory and applied like the rules at the top.

R
case

*
I ob
will
thin
dece
mad

H
who
E
fool
W
pers
S
him
conc

obse
trad

* TI
nomin
I obey
govern
Syntax
bear u
lesson
† TI
the ve
† Ne
govern
Som
—sh
‡ Bu
Repen
† Bu
† mus
three

RULE II. *An active verb governs the objective case ; as, We love him ; he loves us.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

* He enjoined me to tell the whole truth, and I obeyed him. If thou bring her to school, I will teach her and reward thee. Whom do you think I found in the garden? Me thou hast deceived by breaking the promise which thou madest.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He loves we. He and they we know, but who art thou? Let thou and I the battle try.

Esteeming† themselves wise, they become fools. Upon seeing I he turned pale.

Who did you bring with you? They are the persons who‡ we ought to respect.

§ Repenting him of his design he hastened him back. It will be very difficult to agree his conduct with the principles he professes.

I shall premise with two or three general observations. He ingratiates with some by traducing others.

* The pupil may construe thus:—*He enjoined*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*enjoined me*, an active verb governs the objective case—*I obeyed*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*obeyed him*, an active verb governs the objective case—and so on in going through the Rules of Syntax, the pupil applying such of them as he may have learned which bear upon the Exercises, or only the individual Rule under which the lesson stands.

† The participle being a part of the verb, governs the same case with the verb.

‡ Note. *When the objective is a relative, it comes before the verb that governs it.* (See No. 4, p. 67.)

Sometimes the objective after an active verb is a clause; as, I know *what that is.*—(See last Note, p. 101.)

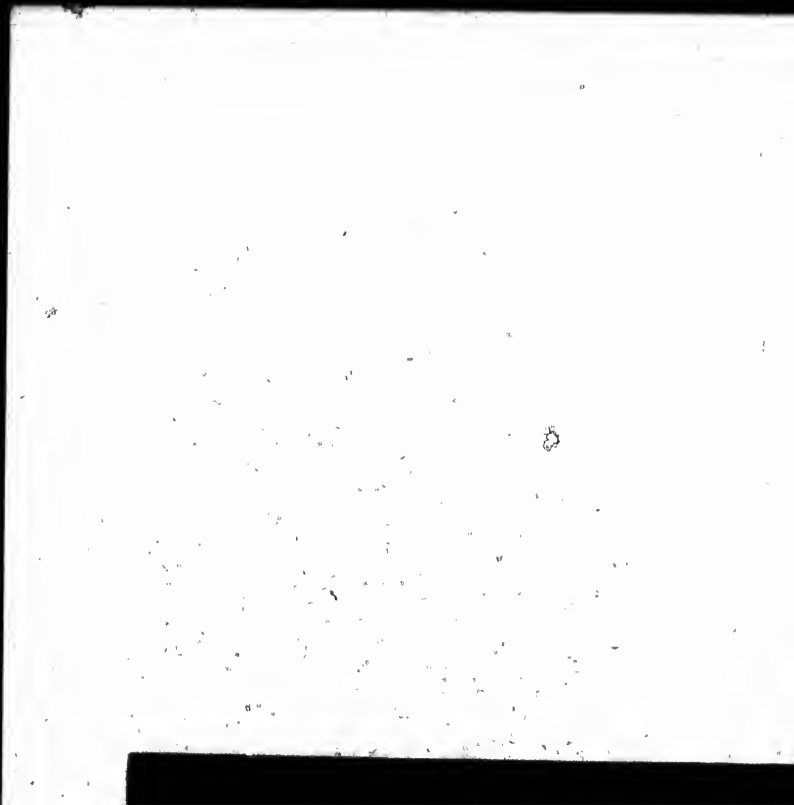
§ Rule I. *Neuter verbs do not admit of an objective after them:* Thus, *Repenting him of his design, should be, Repenting of his design.*

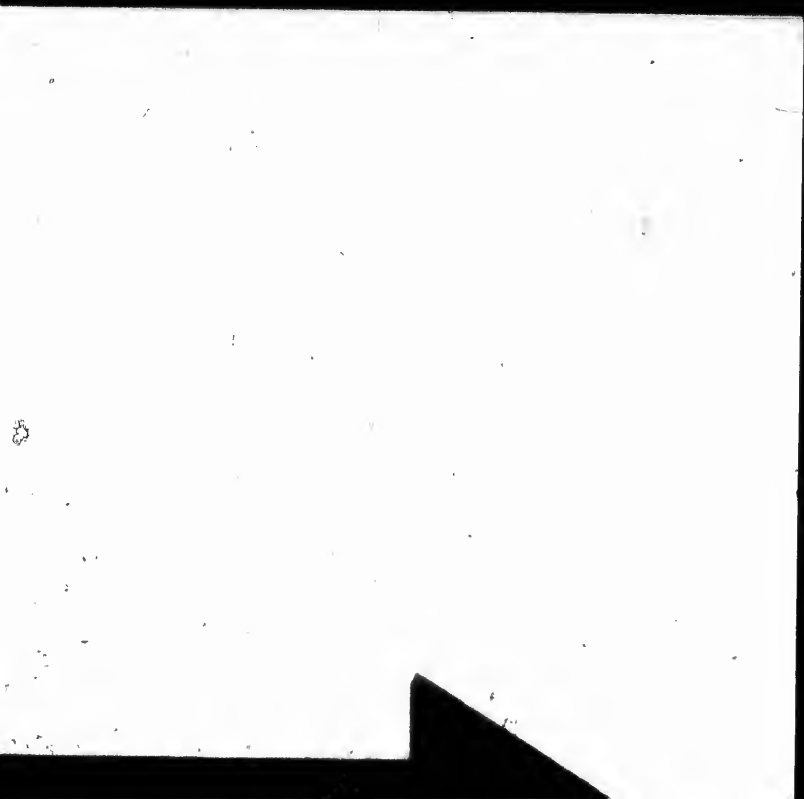
|| Rule II. *Active verbs do not admit of a preposition after them:* Thus, I must premise with three circumstances, *should be, I must premise three circumstances.*

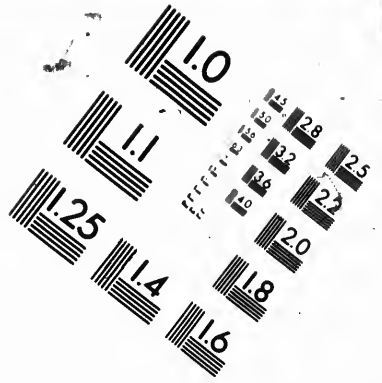
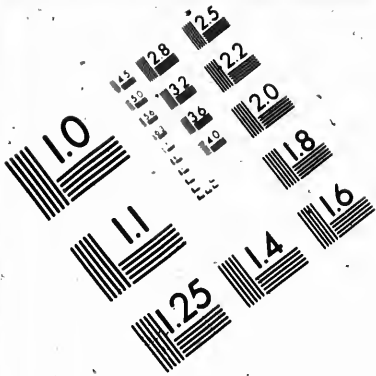
¶ For *Neuter verbs in the Passive form*, see Note, p. 128.



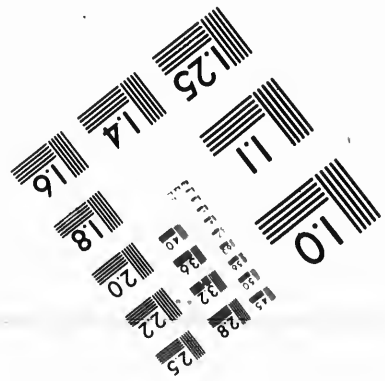
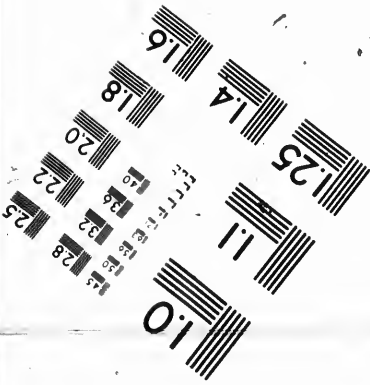
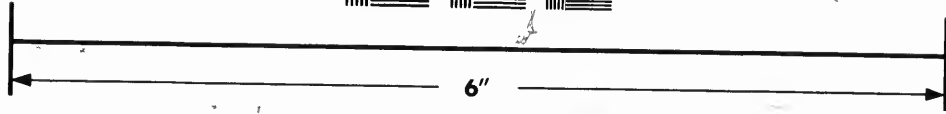
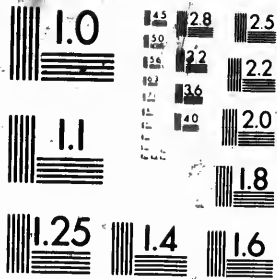








**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

13 28
15 30
17 32
19 34
21 36
23 38
25 40
27 42
29 44
31 46
33 48
35 50
37 52
39 54
41 56
43 58
45 60
47 62
49 64
51 66
53 68
55 70
57 72
59 74
61 76
63 78
65 80
67 82
69 84
71 86
73 88
75 90
77 92
79 94
81 96
83 98
85 100
87 102
89 104
91 106
93 108
95 110
97 112
99 114
101 116
103 118
105 120
107 122
109 124
111 126
113 128
115 130
117 132
119 134
121 136
123 138
125 140
127 142
129 144
131 146
133 148
135 150
137 152
139 154
141 156
143 158
145 160
147 162
149 164
151 166
153 168
155 170
157 172
159 174
161 176
163 178
165 180
167 182
169 184
171 186
173 188
175 190
177 192
179 194
181 196
183 198
185 200
187 202
189 204
191 206
193 208
195 210
197 212
199 214
201 216
203 218
205 220
207 222
209 224
211 226
213 228
215 230
217 232
219 234
221 236
223 238
225 240
227 242
229 244
231 246
233 248
235 250
237 252
239 254
241 256
243 258
245 260
247 262
249 264
251 266
253 268
255 270
257 272
259 274
261 276
263 278
265 280
267 282
269 284
271 286
273 288
275 290
277 292
279 294
281 296
283 298
285 300
287 302
289 304
291 306
293 308
295 310
297 312
299 314
301 316
303 318
305 320
307 322
309 324
311 326
313 328
315 330
317 332
319 334
321 336
323 338
325 340
327 342
329 344
331 346
333 348
335 350
337 352
339 354
341 356
343 358
345 360
347 362
349 364
351 366
353 368
355 370
357 372
359 374
361 376
363 378
365 380
367 382
369 384
371 386
373 388
375 390
377 392
379 394
381 396
383 398
385 400
387 402
389 404
391 406
393 408
395 410
397 412
399 414
401 416
403 418
405 420
407 422
409 424
411 426
413 428
415 430
417 432
419 434
421 436
423 438
425 440
427 442
429 444
431 446
433 448
435 450
437 452
439 454
441 456
443 458
445 460
447 462
449 464
451 466
453 468
455 470
457 472
459 474
461 476
463 478
465 480
467 482
469 484
471 486
473 488
475 490
477 492
479 494
481 496
483 498
485 500
487 502
489 504
491 506
493 508
495 510
497 512
499 514
501 516
503 518
505 520
507 522
509 524
511 526
513 528
515 530
517 532
519 534
521 536
523 538
525 540
527 542
529 544
531 546
533 548
535 550
537 552
539 554
541 556
543 558
545 560
547 562
549 564
551 566
553 568
555 570
557 572
559 574
561 576
563 578
565 580
567 582
569 584
571 586
573 588
575 590
577 592
579 594
581 596
583 598
585 600
587 602
589 604
591 606
593 608
595 610
597 612
599 614
601 616
603 618
605 620
607 622
609 624
611 626
613 628
615 630
617 632
619 634
621 636
623 638
625 640
627 642
629 644
631 646
633 648
635 650
637 652
639 654
641 656
643 658
645 660
647 662
649 664
651 666
653 668
655 670
657 672
659 674
661 676
663 678
665 680
667 682
669 684
671 686
673 688
675 690
677 692
679 694
681 696
683 698
685 700
687 702
689 704
691 706
693 708
695 710
697 712
699 714
701 716
703 718
705 720
707 722
709 724
711 726
713 728
715 730
717 732
719 734
721 736
723 738
725 740
727 742
729 744
731 746
733 748
735 750
737 752
739 754
741 756
743 758
745 760
747 762
749 764
751 766
753 768
755 770
757 772
759 774
761 776
763 778
765 780
767 782
769 784
771 786
773 788
775 790
777 792
779 794
781 796
783 798
785 800
787 802
789 804
791 806
793 808
795 810
797 812
799 814
801 816
803 818
805 820
807 822
809 824
811 826
813 828
815 830
817 832
819 834
821 836
823 838
825 840
827 842
829 844
831 846
833 848
835 850
837 852
839 854
841 856
843 858
845 860
847 862
849 864
851 866
853 868
855 870
857 872
859 874
861 876
863 878
865 880
867 882
869 884
871 886
873 888
875 890
877 892
879 894
881 896
883 898
885 900
887 902
889 904
891 906
893 908
895 910
897 912
899 914
901 916
903 918
905 920
907 922
909 924
911 926
913 928
915 930
917 932
919 934
921 936
923 938
925 940
927 942
929 944
931 946
933 948
935 950
937 952
939 954
941 956
943 958
945 960
947 962
949 964
951 966
953 968
955 970
957 972
959 974
961 976
963 978
965 980
967 982
969 984
971 986
973 988
975 990
977 992
979 994
981 996
983 998
985 1000
987 1002
989 1004
991 1006
993 1008
995 1010
997 1012
999 1014
1001 1016
1003 1018
1005 1020
1007 1022
1009 1024
1011 1026
1013 1028
1015 1030
1017 1032
1019 1034
1021 1036
1023 1038
1025 1040
1027 1042
1029 1044
1031 1046
1033 1048
1035 1050
1037 1052
1039 1054
1041 1056
1043 1058
1045 1060
1047 1062
1049 1064
1051 1066
1053 1068
1055 1070
1057 1072
1059 1074
1061 1076
1063 1078
1065 1080
1067 1082
1069 1084
1071 1086
1073 1088
1075 1090
1077 1092
1079 1094
1081 1096
1083 1098
1085 1100
1087 1102
1089 1104
1091 1106
1093 1108
1095 1110
1097 1112
1099 1114
1101 1116
1103 1118
1105 1120
1107 1122
1109 1124
1111 1126
1113 1128
1115 1130
1117 1132
1119 1134
1121 1136
1123 1138
1125 1140
1127 1142
1129 1144
1131 1146
1133 1148
1135 1150
1137 1152
1139 1154
1141 1156
1143 1158
1145 1160
1147 1162
1149 1164
1151 1166
1153 1168
1155 1170
1157 1172
1159 1174
1161 1176
1163 1178
1165 1180
1167 1182
1169 1184
1171 1186
1173 1188
1175 1190
1177 1192
1179 1194
1181 1196
1183 1198
1185 1200
1187 1202
1189 1204
1191 1206
1193 1208
1195 1210
1197 1212
1199 1214
1201 1216
1203 1218
1205 1220
1207 1222
1209 1224
1211 1226
1213 1228
1215 1230
1217 1232
1219 1234
1221 1236
1223 1238
1225 1240
1227 1242
1229 1244
1231 1246
1233 1248
1235 1250
1237 1252
1239 1254
1241 1256
1243 1258
1245 1260
1247 1262
1249 1264
1251 1266
1253 1268
1255 1270
1257 1272
1259 1274
1261 1276
1263 1278
1265 1280
1267 1282
1269 1284
1271 1286
1273 1288
1275 1290
1277 1292
1279 1294
1281 1296
1283 1298
1285 1300
1287 1302
1289 1304
1291 1306
1293 1308
1295 1310
1297 1312
1299 1314
1301 1316
1303 1318
1305 1320
1307 1322
1309 1324
1311 1326
1313 1328
1315 1330
1317 1332
1319 1334
1321 1336
1323 1338
1325 1340
1327 1342
1329 1344
1331 1346
1333 1348
1335 1350
1337 1352
1339 1354
1341 1356
1343 1358
1345 1360
1347 1362
1349 1364
1351 1366
1353 1368
1355 1370
1357 1372
1359 1374
1361 1376
1363 1378
1365 1380
1367 1382
1369 1384
1371 1386
1373 1388
1375 1390
1377 1392
1379 1394
1381 1396
1383 1398
1385 1400
1387 1402
1389 1404
1391 1406
1393 1408
1395 1410
1397 1412
1399 1414
1401 1416
1403 1418
1405 1420
1407 1422
1409 1424
1411 1426
1413 1428
1415 1430
1417 1432
1419 1434
1421 1436
1423 1438
1425 1440
1427 1442
1429 1444
1431 1446
1433 1448
1435 1450
1437 1452
1439 1454
1441 1456
1443 1458
1445 1460
1447 1462
1449 1464
1451 1466
1453 1468
1455 1470
1457 1472
1459 1474
1461 1476
1463 1478
1465 1480
1467 1482
1469 1484
1471 1486
1473 1488
1475 1490
1477 1492
1479 1494
1481 1496
1483 1498
1485 1500
1487 1502
1489 1504
1491 1506
1493 1508
1495 1510
1497 1512
1499 1514
1501 1516
1503 1518
1505 1520
1507 1522
1509 1524
1511 1526
1513 1528
1515 1530
1517 1532
1519 1534
1521 1536
1523 1538
1525 1540
1527 1542
1529 1544
1531 1546
1533 1548
1535 1550
1537 1552
1539 1554
1541 1556
1543 1558
1545 1560
1547 1562
1549 1564
1551 1566
1553 1568
1555 1570
1557 1572
1559 1574
1561 1576
1563 1578
1565 1580
1567 1582
1569 1584
1571 1586
1573 1588
1575 1590
1577 1592
1579 1594
1581 1596
1583 1598
1585 1600
1587 1602
1589 1604
1591 1606
1593 1608
1595 1610
1597 1612
1599 1614
1601 1616
1603 1618
1605 1620
1607 1622
1609 1624
1611 1626
1613 1628
1615 1630
1617 1632
1619 1634
1621 1636
1623 1638
1625 1640
1627 1642
1629 1644
1631 1646
1633 1648
1635 1650
1637 1652
1639 1654
1641 1656
1643 1658
1645 1660
1647 1662
1649 1664
1651 1666
1653 1668
1655 1670
1657 1672
1659 1674
1661 1676
1663 1678
1665 1680
1667 1682
1669 1684
1671 1686
1673 1688
1675 1690
1677 1692
1679 1694
1681 1696
1683 1698
1685 1700
1687 1702
1689 1704
1691 1706
1693 1708
1695 1710
1697 1712
1699 1714
1701 1716
1703 1718
1705 1720
1707 1722
1709 1724
1711 1726
1713 1728
1715 1730
1717 1732
1719 1734
1721 1736
1723 1738
1725 1740
1727 1742
1729 1744
1731 1746
1733 1748
1735 1750
1737 1752
1739 1754
1741 1756
1743 1758
1745 1760
1747 1762
1749 1764
1751 1766
1753 1768
1755 1770
1757 1772
1759 1774
1761 1776
1763 1778
1765 1780
1767 1782
1769 1784
1771 1786
1773 1788
1775 1790
1777 1792
1779 1794
1781 1796
1783 1798
1785 1800
1787 1802
1789 1804
1791 1806
1793 1808
1795 1810
1797 1812
1799 1814
1801 1816
1803 1818
1805 1820
1807 1822
1809 1824
1811 1826
1813 1828
1815 1830
1817 1832
1819 1834
1821 1836
1823 1838
1825 1840
1827 1842
1829 1844
1831 1846
1833 1848
1835 1850
1837 1852
1839 1854
1841 1856
1843 1858
1845 1860
1847 1862
1849 1864
1851 1866
1853 1868
1855 1870
1857 1872
1859 1874
1861 1876
1863 1878
1865 1880
1867 1882
1869 1884
1871 1886
1873 1888
1875 1890
1877 1892
1879 1894
1881 1896
1883 1898
1885 1900
1887 1902
1889 1904
1891 1906
1893 1908
1895 1910
1897 1912
1899 1914
1901 1916
1903 1918
1905 1920
1907 1922
1909 1924
1911 1926
1913 1928
1915 1930
1917 1932
1919 1934
1921 1936
1923 1938
1925 1940
1927 1942
1929 1944
1931 1946
1933 1948
1935 1950
1937 1952
1939 1954
1941 1956
1943 1958
1945 1960
1947 1962
1949 1964
1951 1966
1953 1968
1955 1970
1957 1972
1959 1974
1961 1976
1963 1978
1965 1980
1967 1982
1969 1984
1971 1986
1973 1988
1975 1990
1977 1992
1979 1994
1981 1996
1983 1998
1985 2000
1987 2002
1989 2004
1991 2006
1993 2008
1995 2010
1997 2012
1999 2014
2001 2016
2003 2018
2005 2020
2007 2022
2009 2024
2011 2026
2013 2028
2015 2030
2017 2032
2019 2034
2021 2036
2023 2038
2025 2040
2027 2042
2029 2044
2031 2046
2033 2048
2035 2050
2037 2052
2039 2054
2041 2056
2043 2058
2045 2060
2047 2062
2049 2064
2051 2066
2053 2068
2055 2070
2057 2072
2059 2074
2061 2076
2063 2078
2065 2080
2067 2082
2069 2084
2071 2086
2073 2088
2075 2090
2077 2092
2079 2094
2081 2096
2083 2098
2085 2100
2087 2102
2089 2104
2091 2106
2093 2108
2095 2110
2097 2112
2099 2114
2101 2116
2103 2118
2105 2120
2107 2122
2109 2124
2111 2126
2113 2128
2115 2130
2117 2132
2119 2134
2121 2136
2123 2138
2125 2140
2127 2142
2129 2144
2131 2146
2133 2148
2135 2150
2137 2152
2139 2154
2141 2156
2143 2158
2145 2160
2147 2162
2149 2164
2151 2166
2153 2168
2155 2170
2157 2172
2159 2174
2161 2176
2163 2178
2165 2180
2167 2182
2169 2184
2171 2186
2173 2188
2175 2190
2177 2192
2179 2194
2181 2196
2183 2198
2185 2200
2187 2202
2189 2204
2191 2206
2193 2208
2195 2210
2197 2212
2199 2214
2201 2216
2203 2218
2205 2220
2207 2222
2209 2224
2211 2226
2213 2228
2215 2230
2217 2232
2219 2234
2221 2236
2223 2238
2225 2240
2227 2242
2229 2244
2231 2246
2233 2248
2235 2250
2237 2252
2239 2254
2241 2256
2243 2258
2245 2260
2247 2262
2249 2264
2251 2266
2253 2268
2255 2270
2257 2272
2259 2274
2261 2276
2263 2278
2265 2280
2267 2282
2269 2284
2271 2286
2273 2288
2275 2290
2277 2292
2279 2294
2281 2296
2283 2298
2285 2300
2287 2302
2289 2304
2291 2306
2293 2308
2295 2310
2297 2312
2299 2314
2301 2316
2303 2318
2305 2320
2307 2322
2309 2324
2311 2326
2313 2328
2315 2330
2317 2332
2319 2334
2321 2336
2323 2338
2325 2340
2327 2342
2329 2344
2331 2346
2333 2348
2335 2350
2337 2352
2339 2354
2341 2356
2343 2358
2345 2360
2347 2362
2349 2364
2351 2366
2353 2368
2355 2370
2357 2372
2359 2374
2361 2376
2363 2378
2365 2380
2367 2382
2369 2384
2371 2386
2373 2388
2375 2390
2377 2392
2379 2394
2381 2396
2383 2398
2385 2400
2387 2402
2389 2404
2391 2406
2393 2408
2395 2410
2397 2412
2399 2414
2401 2416
2403 2418
2405 2420
2407 2422
2409 2424
2411 2426
2413 2428
2415 2430
2417 2432
2419 2434
2421 2436
2423 2438
2425 2440
2427 2442
2429 2444
2431 2446
2433 2448
2435 2450
2437 2452
2439 2454
2441 2456
2443 2458
2445 2460
2447 2462
2449 2464
2451 24

RULE III. *Prepositions govern the objective case*; as, *To whom* much is given, of *him* much shall be required.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

To whom did you send the money? On me, not on her, let the blame fall. John and I went to sea on the same day; but he outstripped me in seamancraft, and got the command of a ship before me. Water rises in vapour from the sea, forms clouds in the air, and then falls in showers on the earth.

Earth's highest station ends in "Here he lies."

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Will you go with I? Withhold not good from they to who it is due. Who do you live with? Great friendship subsists between he and I. They willingly, and of theirselves, endeavoured to make up the difference. He laid the blame upon somebody, I know not who, in the company.

* Who do you speak to? Who dost thou serve under? Flattery can hurt none, but those who it is agreeable to. It is not I who thou are engaged with. Who didst thou receive that intelligence from?

† He is quite unacquainted with, and consequently cannot speak upon, that subject.

* Rule I. *The preposition should be placed immediately before the relative which it governs*; as, *To whom* do you speak?

The preposition is often separated from the relative; but though this is perhaps allowable in familiar conversation, yet, in solemn composition, the placing of the preposition immediately before the relative is more perspicuous and elegant.

† Rule II. *It is inelegant to connect two prepositions, or one and an active verb, with the same noun*; for example, *They were refused entrance into, and forcibly driven from, the house; should be, They were refused entrance into the house, and forcibly driven from it.*—*I wrote to, and warned him; should be, I wrote to him and warned him.*

Prepositions sometimes govern a sentence or clause; as, *For want of attending to his duty he lost his place.*

R
coup
in th
boys
T
by o
the s

De
orato
are t
or co
the c
The
is eit
this
week
mont

He
the p
for th
same

Ne
as ex
prese
or a s
der.
a wat

* And
into one
comparis
sometim
! Or s

RULE IV. *Two or more singular nominatives, coupled with AND, require a verb and pronoun in the plural; as, James and John are good boys; for they are busy.**

Two or more singular nominatives separated by OR or NOR, require a verb and pronoun in the singular; as, James or John is dux.†

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Demosthenes and Cicero were the greatest orators of antiquity. Faith, hope, and charity, are the three chief graces of the gospel. Town or country is equally agreeable to me. Neither the captain nor the pilot has yet come on board. The king as well as the beggar is mortal. It is either my uncie or my aunt that has sent me this gift. Intemperance slays more men in a week, than the sword or the musket does in a month. Is the lark or the thrush the better singer?

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He and I meets often. Life and death is in the power of the tongue. The time and place for the conference was agreed on. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.

Neither precept nor discipline are so forcible as example. Either the boy or the girl were present. It must be confessed that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder. Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which move merely as they are moved.

* *And is the only conjunction that binds the agency of two or more into one; for, as well as, never does that; but merely states a sort of comparison; thus, "Cæsar, as well as Cicero, was eloquent." With is sometimes used for and.—See Miscellaneous Obs. p. 143 and 144.*

† *Or and nor are the only conjunctions applicable to this rule.*

RULE V. *Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs*; as, *Do good and seek peace.*

Conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns; as, *He and I are happy.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The prisoner was tried, but acquitted. He will neither go himself nor allow me to go. Scripture commands us to fear God and honour the king. Strike, but hear me. The master called up you, Harry, and me: he punished you and him, but not me. The man who reads God's word and obeys it, is a godly man.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He reads and wrote well. He or me must go. My brother and him are tolerable grammarians. If he understands the subject, and attend to it, he can scarcely fail of success. Did he not tell thee his fault, and entreated* thee to forgive him? And dost thou, a pious man, live in extravagance, and bringest* me with am one of thy creditors to ruin? Professing regard, and to act differently, mark a base mind. If a man professes a regard for the duties of religion, and neglect those of morality, that man's religion is vain.

† Rank may confer influence, but will not necessarily produce virtue. He is not rich, but ‡ is respectable. Our season of improvement is short; and, whether used or not, † will soon pass away.

The same form of the verb must be continued.

† Conjunctions frequently couple different moods and tenses of verbs; but in these instances the nominative is generally repeated; as, *He may return, but he will not continue.*

‡ The nominative is generally repeated, even to the same mood and tense, when a contrast is stated with *but, not, or though, &c.*, as in this sentence.

R
infin

To
the v
let, p

Th
is mo
no w
down
the s
Satan
him f

Th
injur

live a
Th
to pro
person
We h
heard
do his
him t
the so

* The
as, They
infinitive

Let gov
† To li
as, He w
active, in
to walk a

The in
To proce

RULE VI. *One verb governs another in the infinitive mood ; as, Forget not to do good.**

To, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after the verbs bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, let, perceive, behold, observe, have, and know. †

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The tenant was ordered to leave the farm. It is more blessed to give than to receive. I have no wish to travel. Make the multitude sit down. I dare not tell a lie. Bid him sheathe the sword and spare his country. I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. I saw him fire the gun. He was seen to fire the gun.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They obliged him do it. We ought forgive injuries. It is better live on a little, than outlive a great deal.

They need not to call upon her. I dare not to proceed so hastily. I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly. We heard the thunder to roll. The thunder was heard roll over our heads. I bid my steward to do his duty, and he doeth it. The sound made him to tremble. He was made tremble by the sound.

* The infinitive mood is frequently governed by *nouns* and *adjectives*; as, They have a *desire* to learn; *worthy* to be loved. *For*, before the infinitive, is unnecessary.

Let governs the objective case; as, Let him beware.

† *To* is generally used after the Passive of these verbs, except *let*; as, He was made to believe it; he was let go; and sometimes after the active, in the past tense, especially of *have*, a principal verb; as, I had to walk all the way.—See p. 63, b.

The infinitive is often independent of the rest of the sentence; as *To proceed*; *to confess the truth*, I was in fault.

RULE VII. *When two nouns come together signifying different things, the first is put in the possessive case; as, John's book; on eagles' wings.*

When two nouns come together signifying the same thing, they agree in case; as, Cicero the orator; the city Edinburgh.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

I have a copy of Shakspeare's plays. Invalids are sometimes ordered to drink asses' milk. Lennie's Grammar was printed in Oliver and Boyd's printing-office.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Pompeys pillar. A mothers tenderness and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage. For Jesus Christ his sake.

* Peter's, John's, and Andrew's occupation was that of fishermen. He asked his father, as well as his mother's advice.

Moses† rod. For conscience's sake.

* Rule. *When several nouns come together in the possessive case, the apostrophe with s is annexed to the last, and understood to the rest; as, Jane and Luoy's books.*

When any words intervene, the sign of the possessive should be annexed to each; as, This gained the king's, as well as the people's approbation.

† To prevent too much of the hissing sound, the s after the apostrophe is generally omitted when the first noun has an s in each of its two last syllables, and the second noun begins with s; as, *Righteousness' sake, For conscience' sake, Francis' sake*: but we say, *The witness's sake*.

It has lately become common, when the nominative singular ends in s or ss, to form the possessive by omitting the s after the apostrophe; as, *James' book, Miss' shoes*, instead of *James's book, Miss's shoes*. This is improper. Put these phrases into questions, and then they will appear ridiculous. Is this book *James's*? Are these shoes *Miss's*? Nor are they less ridiculous without the interrogatory form; as, This book is *James's*, &c.—K. 195-6-7.

We sometimes use *of* instead of the *apostrophe and s*; thus we say, *The wisdom of Socrates*, rather than *Socrates's wisdom*. In some instances we use the *of* and the possessive termination too; as, It is a discovery of *Sir Isaac Newton's*, that is, one of *Sir Isaac Newton's* discoveries. A picture of my friend, means a *portrait* of him: But a picture *of* my friend's, means a portrait of some other person, and that it belongs to my friend.

As precise rules for the formation of the possessive case, in all situa-

Ru
veys u
be sing

Wh
of ide
as, Th
of wh

E
The
gregat
the na
its vo
friends
—it f
world

The
ish th
or oug
The r
Parlia
sailing
more
herrin
people
ing to
ciently

tions can
amples fo
bookselle
ther's sak
Whose g
eral of an

* W Nic

RULE VIII. *When a noun of multitude conveys unity of idea, the verb and pronoun should be singular ; as, The class was large.**

When a noun of multitude conveys plurality of idea, the verb and pronoun should be plural ; as, The people of Great Britain enjoy privileges of which they ought to be proud.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The meeting was well attended. The congregation met, but were soon dismissed. When the nation complains, the rulers should listen to its voice. His family is neglected, and his friends are disgusted. What an immense fleet—it fills the whole bay: no harbour in the world could contain it.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The court of Spain have often done very foolish things. The flock, and not the fleece, are, or ought to be, the object of the shepherd's care. The regiment consist of a thousand men. The Parliament are dissolved. The fleet were seen sailing up the channel. This generation are far more intelligent than the last. The shoal of herrings were immense. The remnant of the people were persecuted. The army are marching to Cadiz. Some said the navy were sufficiently strong, others said they were not.

Examples can scarcely be given, I shall merely subjoin a few correct examples for the pupil's imitation; thus, I left the parcel at *Smith's* the bookseller; The Lord Mayor of *London's* authority; For David thy *father's* sake; He took refuge at the *governor's* the *king's* representative; Whose glory did he emulate? He emulated *Cæsar's*, the greatest general of antiquity.—See last note under Rule XII., also Rule XXX.

* *Which*, and not *who*, is applied to collective nouns.—See p. 153, mid.

RULE IX. *The verb TO BE should have the same case after it that it has before it; as, I am he; I understood it to be him.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

It is I. Whom did your tutor take me to be? Were I he, I would act a very different part. His fellow-soldiers declared him to be a coward. Thou shalt be governor over my house, and thy word shall be law to my servants. Their motto was, "No surrender." When they saw him walking upon the sea, they supposed him a spirit. Simon was surnamed Peter.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

It was me who wrote the letter. It was him who got the first prize. I am sure it was not us that did it. It was them who gave us all this trouble. I would not act the same part again, if I were him. Though he was suspected of forging a letter, yet it could not be him, for he never could write his own name.

Let him be whom he may, I am not afraid of him. Who do you think him to be? Whom think ye that she is? Was it me that said so? I am certain it was not him. It was either him or his brother that got the first prize.

* When the verb *to be* is understood, it has the same case after it that it has before it; as, He seems the leader of a party. I supposed him a man of learning: that is, *to be* the leader, &c., *to be* a man, &c.

Part of a sentence is sometimes the nominative both before and after the verb *to be*; as, His maxim was, "Be master of thy anger."

The verb *to be* is often followed by an adjective.—See No. 5.

Passive verbs which signify naming, and some neuter verbs, have a nominative after them; as, He shall be called John. He became the slave of irregular passions. Stephen died a martyr for the Christian religion.

Some passive verbs admit an objective after them; as, John was first denied apples, then he was promised them, then he was offered them.

* Rule
tive Moo
Avoid un
† Rule
the Subj
But when
In the
derstood
compose l

RULE X. Sentences that imply contingency and futurity require the Subjunctive Mood; as, *If he be alone, give him the letter.*

When contingency and futurity are not BOTH implied, the Indicative ought to be used; as, If he speaks as he thinks, he may safely be trusted.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

If he acquire riches, he may find that he is no happier than before. Though he fall from his horse, I trust he will not be hurt. Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall. If he follows the course he has promised to take, he is sure to succeed.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

If children are neglected till vice has become habitual to them, they are hardly ever reformed afterwards. Though he be in an elevated station, yet he is never proud. If thou be a Christian, act like one. If he does promise, he will certainly perform. Oh! that his heart was tender.

* Despise not any condition, lest it happens to be thy own. Take care that thou breakest not any of the established rules.

† If he does but intimate his desire, it will produce obedience. If he be but in health, I am content. If he but asks to be forgiven, his father will pardon him.

* Rule I. Lest and that annexed to a command require the Subjunctive Mood; as, *Shun bad company, lest you be ensnared and ruined. Avoid suretyship, that you may not lose your money and your friend.*

† Rule II. *If, with but following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the Subjunctive Mood; as, If a boy but try to learn, he will succeed.* But when future time is not expressed, the Indicative ought to be used. In the subjunctive, the auxiliaries *shall, should, &c.*, are generally understood; as, *Though he fall, i. e. though he should fall. Until reflection compose his mind, i. e. until reflection shall compose.* See K. 256.

RULE XI. *Some adverbs and conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions ; thus,*

<i>Neither</i> requires <i>Nor</i> after it ; as, <i>Neither</i> he nor his brother was in.	
<i>Though</i> <i>Yet</i> ; as, <i>Though</i> he is poor, <i>yet</i> he is respectable.	
<i>Whether</i> <i>Or</i> <i>Whether</i> he will do it or not, I cannot tell.	
<i>Either</i> <i>Or</i> *..... <i>Either</i> she or her sister must go.	
<i>As</i> <i>As</i> <i>Mine</i> is as good as yours.	
<i>As</i> <i>So</i> <i>As</i> thy diligence, so shall thy success, be.	
<i>So</i> †..... <i>As</i> <i>He</i> is not so wise as his brother.	
<i>So</i> <i>That</i> <i>I</i> am so weak that I cannot walk.	

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.
Teach us so to number our days, as to apply our hearts unto wisdom. Is he as good a reader as you? You can go to London either by land or by sea. As the tides obey the moon, so should our passions bend to our judgment. Whether we live or die, we are the Lord's. Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents. He ran so fast, that I could not overtake him.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

It is neither cold or hot. The one is equally deserving as the other. I must be so candid to own, that I have been mistaken. He was so angry as he could not speak. He is not as faithful and trustworthy as I could wish him to be. Neither despise the poor, or envy the rich. As far as I am able to judge, the book is well written. Though she was poor, she was not discontented.

* The poets frequently use *Or*—*or*, for *Either*—*or* ; and *Nor*—*nor* for *Neither*—*nor*.—In prose *not*—*nor* is often used for *neither*—*nor*.—The *yet* after *though* is frequently and properly suppressed.

Or does not require *either* before it when the one word is a mere explanation of the other ; as, 20s., or £1 sterling, is enough.

† See K. No. 204.

H
usec
and
con
our

B
ther
requ
rush
risin

B
mist
pose
is th
†
coura
of an
this p

* The
as, The
neighb
orable t
very dif
He can
spent an

† The
of Of a
vented e
When
dependin
young re

† Rule
case ; as
Some
case ; th
you thin
running

RULE XII. *When the present participle is used as a noun, it generally takes The before it, and Of after it; as, The sum of the moral law consists in the obeying of God, and the loving of our neighbour as ourselves.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

By the exercising of our faculties we improve them. The preparing of the necessary materials requires time. Your voice is drowned by the rushing of the waters. The sea rose with the rising of the wind.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

By observing of these rules, you may avoid mistakes. This was a betraying the trust reposed in him. The not attending to this rule is the cause of a very common error.

† Our approving their bad conduct may encourage them to become worse. Your sending of an answer will oblige. ‡ What is the reason of this person's dismissing of his servant so hastily?

* These phrases would be right, were *the* and *of* both omitted; as, The sum of the moral law consists in obeying God and loving our neighbour, &c. This manner of expression is in many instances, preferable to the other. In some cases, however, these two modes express very different ideas, and therefore attention to the sense is necessary; as, He confessed the whole in the hearing of three witnesses, and the court spent an hour in hearing their deposition.—Key, No. 208, &c.

† The present participle with a possessive before it sometimes admits of *Of after it, and sometimes not*; as, Their observing of the rules prevented errors. By his studying the Scriptures he became wise.

‡ When a preposition follows the participle, *of is inadmissible*; as, His depending on promises proved his ruin. His neglecting to study when young rendered him ignorant all his life.

† Rule. A noun before the present participle is put in the possessive case; as, Much will depend on the pupil's composing frequently. Sometimes, however, the sense forbids it to be put in the possessive case; thus, What do you think of my horse running to-day? means, Do you think I should let him run? but, What do you think of my horse's running? means, He has run, do you think he ran well?

RULE XIII. *The past participle is used after the verbs have and be; as, I have written a letter; he was chosen.**

¶ The *Present* participle of an *Active* verb, and not the *Perfect*, is generally used after the verb *to be*, to express the *continued suffering* of an action; as, *The house is building*,—not *is being built*.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The British flag is respected in every land. If they had not left the ship, they might have been saved. I saw you, before I was seen by you. The wind has ceased, but the sea is still tossing. Though the ball was extracted a week ago, yet he is still suffering severely from the wound.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He has wrote his copy. He had mistook his true interest. All the gloves that were stole last night were wove ones. His resolution was too strong to be shook by slight opposition. The horse was stole. The Rhine was froze over. She was showed into the drawing-room. The grass was trode down. The work was very well execute. His vices have weakened his mind, and broke his health.

* He soon begun to be weary of having nothing to do. He was greatly heated, and he drunk with avidity.

The bending hermit here a prayer begun.

A second deluge learning thus o'errun;

And the monks finished what the Goths begun.

* The *past participle* must not be used instead of the *past tense*: It is improper to say, *he begun*, for *he began*; *he run*, for *he ran*.

ber,
star
is k

J
to l
will

If
impr
be re
well
gard
for i
be fu
*

sort
by
Ther
inter
a dep
way

* Ru
ing to th
plural;
Whol
Almost
inhabite
Whol

RULE XIV. *Pronouns agree in gender, number, and person, with the nouns for which they stand; as, John has lost his book. Every tree is known by its fruit.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

James accompanied his mother in her journey to London. The man who loves his country will risk his life for its defence.

Night, sable goddess from her ebon throne
In rayless majesty now stretches forth
Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

If the boys are diligent in learning, she will improve. As the girl is most diligent, it should be rewarded. A horse is a useful animal, and well is she worthy of her food. Manure the garden with ashes, for it is an excellent manure for it. Can any one, on their entrance into life, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived?

* I have not seen him this ten days. Those sort of people fear nothing. The chasm made by the earthquake was twenty foot broad. There is six foot water in the hold. I have no interests but that of truth and virtue. What a dense crowd! we shall not be able to force our way through them.

* Rule. *Nouns and numeral adjectives must agree in number according to the sense; thus, This boys, should be these boys, because boys is plural; and six foot, should be six feet, because six is plural.*

Whole should never be joined to distributive nouns in the plural; thus, Almost the whole inhabitants were present; should be, Almost all the inhabitants; but it may be joined to collective nouns in the plural; thus, Whole cities were swallowed up by the earthquake.

RULE XV. *The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as, Thou who readest; the book which was lost.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The money which the miser hoards in his coffers might feed and clothe hundreds of his brethren who are in need. Tell, thou who art a father, how poignant is the anguish which the misconduct of a child produces in the parental bosom.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Those which seek Wisdom will certainly find her. Blessed is the man which walketh in wisdom's ways. The child which* was lost is found.

† The tiger is a beast who destroys without pity: Who of those men came to his assistance?

‡ It is the best which can be got. Solomon was the wisest man whom ever the world saw. It is the same picture which you saw before. All which I have is thine. The lady and lap-dog which we saw at the window.

* It does not appear to me that it is harsh or improper, as Mr. Murray says, to apply *who* to *children*, because they have little reason and reflection; but if it is, at what *age* should we lay aside *which* and apply *who* to them? *That* seems preferable to either. In our translation of the Bible, *who* and *that* are both applied to children, but never *which*. See 2 Sam. xii. 14, 15. Matt. ii. 16. Rev. xii. 5.

† *Which* is applied to inferior animals, and also to persons in asking questions.

‡ Rule. *That* is used instead of *Who* or *Which*.

1. After adjectives in the superlative degree,—after the words *Some* and *All*, and often after *Some* and *Any*.

2. When the antecedent consists of two nouns, the one requiring *who* and the other *Which*; as,—The man and the horse that we saw yesterday.

3. After the interrogative *Who*; as,—Who that has any sense of religion would have argued thus?

There seems to be no satisfactory reason for preferring *that* to *who* after *some* and *all*, except usage. There is indeed as good authority for using *who* after *all*, as for using *that*. Addison, for instance, uses *all who* several times in one paper.

Ru
two a
verb g
Thou

E
I a
unkno
to hel
often a
have l
of the

Tho
but wh
man w
that ta
‡ Th
warnin
known
utmost

* Somet
verily a m

The pro
relative sh
be next th
subject is
vent the fr
as in the 3

† When
ed and sol
the Scriptu
person sin
the Almi
who teach
shouldst g
thee to pro

‡ Rule.
ambiguity:
incapable o
believed inca

RULE XVI. *When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, it and the verb generally agree in person with the last; as, Thou art the boy that was dux yesterday.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

I am the man who commands you. Your unknown benefactor was I, who am still ready to help you. Thou art the friend who has so often assisted me. I am the Lord thy God, who have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.†

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Thou art a pupil who possesses bright parts, but who hast cultivated them but little. I am a man who speak but seldom. Thou James, art he that taughtest me that industry is a good estate.

‡ The king dismissed his minister without any warning or inquiry, who had never before been known to treat his advisers with other than the utmost consideration and kindness.

* Sometimes the relative agrees with the former antecedent; as, I am verily a man who am a Jew. Acts xxii. 3.

The propriety of this rule has been called in question, because the relative should agree with the subject of the verb, whether the subject be next the relative or not. This is true, but it is also true that the subject is generally next the relative, and the rule is calculated to prevent the impropriety of changing from one person of the verb to another, as in the 8d example of errors to be corrected.

† When we address the Divine Being, it is, in my opinion, more pointed and solemn to make the relative agree with the *second person*. In the Scriptures this is generally done. See Neh. ix. 7, &c. In the third person singular of verbs, the solemn *eth* seems to become the dignity of the Almighty better than the familiar *es*; thus, I am the Lord thy God who *teacheth* thee to profit; who *leadeth* thee by the way that thou shouldst go: is more dignified than, I am the Lord thy God who *teaches* thee to profit; who *leads* thee.

‡ Rule. *The relative ought to be placed next its antecedent to prevent ambiguity*: thus, The boy beat his companion, whom everybody believed incapable of doing mischief; *should be*, The boy, whom everybody believed incapable of doing mischief, beat his companion.

RULE XVII. *When singular nominatives of different persons are separated by OR or NOR, the verb agrees with the person next it; as, Either thou or I am in fault; I, or thou, or he, is the author of it.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Neither my sister nor I have been taught to dance. James and you were always attentive to your studies. Either my brother or I am to go. Either thy cousin or thou hast betrayed my secret. I, or you, or the boy who sits beside us, is sure to be blamed for overturning the inkbottle.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Either I or thou am greatly mistaken. He or I is sure of this week's prize. John or I has done it. He or thou is the person who must go to London on that business. Either he or I has done it. Neither my tutor nor I has been able to solve the problem. John and I am to sleep together. Neither you nor he are so fond of books as you ought to be. Either you or George were present when Robert and I was invited to the concert. Why didst thou and thy brother both remain silent when either thou or he shouldst have spoken in my defence?

* The verb, though expressed only to the *last* person, is understood in its proper person to each of the rest, and the sentence, when the ellipsis is supplied, stands thus, "Either thou *art* in fault, or I *am* in fault;" and the next sentence, Either I *am* the author of it, or thou *art* the author of it, or he *is* the author of it.

Supplying the ellipsis thus would render the sentences correct; but so strong is our natural love of brevity, that such a tedious and formal attention to correctness would justly be reckoned stiff and pedantic. It is better to avoid both these forms of expression when it can be conveniently done.

R
nati
the
sailo
Th

N
man
one
does
paren
the
him

H
this
chok
mind
serve
†
His
trove
†
You
there.

* The
plying t
A pardo
a thousa
† Rule
nominati
naturally
† Rule
coupled
I or We
tioned;
have lea

RULE XVIII. *A singular and a plural nominative, separated by OR or NOR, require a verb in the plural; as, Neither the captain nor the sailors were saved.**

The plural nominative should be placed *next* the verb.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Neither poverty nor riches are injurious to a man whose heart is right with God. Whether one or more were concerned in the business, does not yet appear. Neither this man nor his parents have sinned. The shame of defeat, or the hardships of the campaign, have brought him to a premature grave.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He or they was offended at it. The cares of this life, or the deceitfulness of riches, has choked the seeds of virtue in many a promising mind. Neither the king nor his ministers deserves to be praised.

† His meat were locusts and wild honey. His chief occupation and enjoyment were controversy.

‡ Thou and he shared it between them. You and he are diligent in reading their books, therefore they are good boys.

* The same observation may be made respecting the manner of supplying the ellipsis under this rule, that was made respecting the last. A pardonable love of brevity is the cause of the ellipsis in both, and in a thousand other instances.

† Rule I. *When the verb TO BE stands between a singular and a plural nominative, it agrees with the one next it, or with the one which is more naturally the subject of it; as, "The wages of sin is death."*

‡ Rule II. *When a pronoun refers to two words of different persons, coupled with and, it becomes plural, and agrees with the First person when I or We is mentioned; and with the Second, when I or We is not mentioned; as "John and I will lend you our books." "James and you have learned your lessons"*

RULE XIX. *It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as a nominative to the same verb ; as, John he is come home ;—*omit he.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The king he is just. The night it was dark, and the wind it was high. My banks they are furnished with bees. The mate having persuaded the crew to mutiny, he was put in irons. That the soul be without knowledge, it is not good.

The golden rule, † if it † had been observed, the bankrupt who lost his means without any fault of his own, he would not have been so harshly treated by his creditors. ‡ Health, though it is a blessing of such worth, that money, and rank, and fame, are mere baubles in comparison, yet its true value is never known till it is impaired or lost. Whoever forms his opinion of religion from the bad conduct of many of its professors, he will form a very erroneous opinion of it indeed.

§ The modest man thou shouldst patronize him.

The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hooks of steel.

* In some cases where the noun is highly emphatical, the repetition of it in the pronoun is not only allowable but even elegant; as in 1 Kings xviii. 39; see also Deut. xxi. 6.

† Rule and it are the two nominatives; but, contrary to the remark made at page 152, "That every nom. should belong to some verb, expressed or implied," the word *rule* stands by itself without having any verb with which it might agree. The same remark applies to *health* in the next sentence.

‡ It ought to be, *If the golden rule had been observed, &c.*

§ It ought to be, *Though health is a blessing of such worth, &c.*

¶ Rule, *It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as an objective after the same verb; thus, I saw her the Queen at Windsor; omit her.*

R
of a
shou
err
idle

T
the
usag
shou
class

T
death
are
pious
clima
huma
reason
subm
suffer
know
His
any
charit

* The
love to
The
as, To
be made
Nota.
as, "You
mises."
what it
&c., mus
wouldst
to ruin, l

RULE XX. *Where the infinitive mood or a part of a sentence is the nominative to a verb, the verb should be in the third person singular; as, To err—is human, to forgive is divine.* His being idle was the cause of his ruin.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

To be temperate in eating and drinking is the best preservative of health. To take ill usage meekly marks a noble spirit. That you should be content to stand at the foot of the class surprises me.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

To be wickedly intent on doing mischief are death, but to be devoutly intent on doing good are life. To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of all men. That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, are very reasonable to believe. That it is our duty to submit to reproach, insult, and all manner of suffering, rather than do the slightest thing we know to be wrong, admit not of any doubt. His hearing no evil of a friend, nor speaking any of an enemy, were an evidence of his charity.

* The infinitive is equal to a noun; thus, *To play* is pleasant, and boys love to play; are equal to, *Play* is pleasant, and boys love play, p. 66, b.

The infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present participle: as, *To advise; to attempt; or advising, attempting; this substitution can be made only in the beginning of a sentence.*

Note. Part of a sentence is often used as the objective after a verb: as, "You will soon find that the world does not perform what it promises." *What will you find? Ans.* That the world does not perform what it promises. Therefore the clause, *that the world does not perform, &c.*, must be the objective after *find*. Did I not tell (to) thee, that thou wouldst bring me to ruin? Here the clause, *that thou wouldst bring me to ruin,* is the objective after *tell*.

RULE XXI. *Double comparatives and superlatives are improper*; thus, Mine is a *more better* book, but John's is the *most best*; should be, Mine is a *better* book, but John's is the *best*.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

That was the most unkindest cut of all. A more happier day I never spent. All men are, in a greater or lesser degree, foolish. I am more inferior—you are more superior. He is the chiefest* among ten thousand.

His assertion was most untrue. His work is perfect; his brother's more perfect; and his father's the most perfect of all.

Promiscuous Exercises.

I have not heard whether he has accepted the invitation. This is certainly an useful invention. The time will come when no oppressor will be able to screen themselves from punishment. The cavalry and infantry was mingled together in the utmost confusion. If thou be sure that the ice shall not break, you may slide upon it. A taste for music is more universal in Italy and Germany than in this country. A great crowd was assembled in the street, but they dispersed on the appearance of the military. The forty-second regiment suffered much at Waterloo, and vast numbers assembled in Edinburgh to witness their return.

* *Chief, universal, perfect, true, &c., imply the superlative degree without est or most.* In language sublime or passionate, however, the word *perfect* requires the superlative form to give it effect. A bridegroom enraptured with his bride would naturally call her *the most perfect* of her sex.—*Superior and inferior* always imply comparison, and require to after them.

RUI
tence a
allow
or I ca

I ca
thing.
never
no fart
nor no
affected
thysel
solved
at prese

The
built.
in num
She wa
which a
am cous
to view.
are to b
mere bo
words.
whole p
examina
the stok

* Sometim
Nor did they
case they are
When one
another word
expression:
it is elegant.

RULE XXII. *Two negatives in the same sentence are improper*; * thus, I cannot by no means allow it; *should be*, I can by no means allow it, or I cannot by any means allow it.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I cannot drink no more. He cannot do nothing. I never did no harm to you. He will never be no taller. They could not travel no farther. Covet neither riches nor honours, nor no such perishing things. Nothing never affected her so much. Do not interrupt me thyself, nor let no one disturb me. I am resolved not to comply with the proposal, neither at present, nor at any other time.

Promiscuous Exercises.

The barracks for the troops are now being built. If the applicants for relief are only ten in number, I shall be able to supply their wants. She was gayer than the gayest of the ladies which adorn the Queen's court. James and I am cousins. Thy father's merits sets thee forth to view. Extravagance, as well as parsimony, are to be avoided. Prayer does not consist in mere bowing of the knee and uttering of solemn words. His shoes were quite wore out. The whole pupils of the school were present at the examination. Neither the engine-driver nor the stokers was to blame for the accident.

* Sometimes the two negatives are intended to be an affirmative; as, *Nor did they not perceive him; That is, they did perceive him. In this case they are proper.*

When one of the negatives (such as *dis, in, un, im, &c.*), is joined to another word, the two negatives form a pleasing and delicate variety of expression: as, *His language, though simple, is not inelegant; that is, it is elegant.*

RULE XXIII. *Adverbs are, for the most part, placed before adjectives, after verbs active or neuter, and between the auxiliary and the verb; as, He is very attentive: She behaves well, and is much esteemed.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Mary is remarkably tall. Ann reads correctly, and writes elegantly. The prince seldom sleeps as soundly as the peasant. Our blessed Lord, after being cruelly scourged, was ignominiously crucified.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He unaffectedly and forcibly spoke, and was heard attentively by the whole assembly. In the proper disposition of adverbs, the ear carefully requires to be consulted as well as the sense.

† The women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily to assist the government. Having‡ not known, or having not considered, the measures proposed, he failed of success. It was on his own account solely that I went; and to see him chiefly. I state merely the facts. I have no horses; I only have a mule. He not only was wise, but good.

|| Ask me never so much money for it.

* This is but a *general* rule. For it is impossible to give an exact and determinate one for the placing of adverbs on all occasions. The easy flow and perspicuity of the phrase ought to be chiefly regarded.

† The adverb is sometimes placed with propriety before the verb, or at some distance after it: as, The women *voluntarily* contributed all their rings and jewels, &c. They *carried* their proposition *farther*.

‡ Adverbs of *inference, affirmation, and contingency* are generally placed at the beginning of a sentence; as, *Therefore* I conclude. *Doubtless* he will come: *Perhaps* he will not.

§ Not, when it qualifies the present participle, comes *before* it.

|| *Never* is often improperly used for *ever*; thus, "If I walk *never* so fast," should be "*ever* so fast."

Ru
adverb
well, f
tion, f
Adver
tives qua

The
nobles
He liv
tates o
prodig
haustee
of pru
excelle
They
conduc
They h
the war

* Fr
come y
Where
immedi
He drev
represe
last yea
situation

* Rule I.
because it is
would rende
† Rule II.
be used, and
‡ Rule III.
which, &c.—
Some adje
and to expr
adverbs woul
vowel short.

RULE XXIV. *Adjectives should not be used as adverbs, nor adverbs as adjectives; as, Remarkable well, for remarkably well; Thy often indisposition, for thy frequent indisposition; or,*

Adverbs qualify adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs.—Adjectives qualify nouns.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They are miserable poor. They behaved the noblest. He fought bolder than his brother. He lived in a manner agreeable to the dictates of reason and religion. He was extreme prodigal, and his property is now near exhausted. They lived conformable to the rules of prudence. He speaks very fluent, reads excellent, but does not think very coherent. They came agreeable to their promise, and conducted themselves suitable to the occasion. They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.

* From hence it follows. From whence come ye? We went from thence to Oxford. Where† are you going? Bid him come here immediately. We walked there in an hour. He drew up a petition where‡ he too frequently represented his own merit. He went to London last year, since when I have not seen him. The situation where I found him.

* Rule I. *From* should not be used before *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, because it is *implied*.—In many cases, however, the omission of *from* would render the language stiff and disagreeable.

† Rule II. After verbs of motion, *hither*, *thither*, and *whither*, should be used, and not *here*, *there*, and *where*.

‡ Rule III. *When* should not be used as a noun, nor *where*, for *in which*, &c.—For *while*, see Key, 236.

Some adjectives are occasionally used to modify the action of verbs, and to express the quality of things connected with the action where adverbs would not do: as, *Plow deep*. Put him *right*.—Pronounce that vowel *short*.—Cut *close*. Such phrases are deemed good English.

RULE XXV. *The comparative degree, and the pronoun other, require than after them, and such requires as; as, Greater than I;—No other than he;—Such as do well.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Gold is softer than silver, but harder than tin. No other than a fool would make such a rash promise. Such a studious boy as Charles is sure to take a higher place than Henry, though the latter is the cleverer of the two.†

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He has little more of the scholar besides the name. Be ready to succour such persons who need thy assistance. They had no sooner risen but they applied themselves to their studies. This is none other but the gate of paradise. To trust in him is no more but to acknowledge his power.

† James is the wisest of the two. He is the likeliest of any other to succeed. Jafe is the wittier of the three, not the wiser. Of two evils choose the least. Which of these two roads is the shortest? Which is the greater poet, Homer, Virgil, or Milton?

Of two such lessons why forget
The noblest and the manliest one?

* *Such*, meaning either a consequence, or so great, requires *that*; as, His behaviour *was such*, *that* I ordered him to leave the room. *Such* is the influence of money, *that* few can resist it.

† *Rule.* *When two objects are compared, the comparative is generally used; but when more than two, the superlative: as, This is the younger of the two; Mary is the wisest of them all.*

When the two objects form a *group*, or are not so much opposed to each other as to require *than* before the last, some respectable writers use the superlative, and say, "James is the *wisest* of the two." "He is the *weakest* of the two." The superlative is often more agreeable to the ear; nor is the sense injured. In many cases a strict adherence to the comparative form renders the language too stiff and formal.

R
either
or pr
I (am
me.*

Yo
is not
ter ab
been
as dili

Joh
good
than
more
well a
than t
She is
us leav
them t
† W
Whom
book?
He and

* When
objective c
—than who
who is the
as, "He is
have used
phrases wh
ject this too
† *Rule.*—
same case w
Whom book

RULE XXVI. *A pronoun after than, or as, either agrees with a verb, or is governed by a verb or preposition understood; as, He is wiser than I (am); she loved him more than (she loved) me.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

You praise my cousin more than me, but he is not more deserving than I. They have better abilities than we; and the prize would have been gained by them, not us, if they had been as diligent as we.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

John can write better than me. He is as good as her. Thou art a much greater loser than me by his death. She suffers hourly more than me. They know how to write as well as him; but he is a better grammarian than them. They are greater gainers than us. She is not so learned as him. If the king give us leave, we may perform the office as well as them that do.

† Who betrayed her companion? Not me. Whom did you meet? He. Who bought that book? Him. Whom did you see there? He and his sister. Whose pen is this? Mine's.

* When *who* immediately follows *than*, it is used improperly in the objective case; as, "Alfred, *than whom* a greater king never reigned;" —*than whom* is not grammatical. It ought to be, *than who*; because *who* is the nom. to *was understood*—*Than whom* is as bad a phrase as, "He is taller *than him*." It is true that some of our best writers have used *than whom*; but it is also true, that they have used other phrases which we have rejected as ungrammatical; then why not reject this too?

† Rule.—*The word containing the answer to a question must be in the same case with the word which asks it: as, Who said that? I (said it). Whose books are these? John's (books).*

RULE XXVII. *The distributive adjectives, each, every, either, neither, agree with nouns and verbs in the singular number only; as, Each of his brothers is in a favourable situation; Every man is accountable for himself; Either of them is good enough.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Every face has its own peculiar expression. Either of the two is at your disposal. Neither of the combatants was prepared for so hard an encounter.

Each look'd to sun, and stream, and plain,
As what he ne'er might see again.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Let each esteem others better than themselves. Every one of the letters bear date after his banishment. Each of them, in their turn, receive the benefits to which they are entitled. Neither of them seem to have any idea that their opinions may be ill-founded. Are either of these men your friend?

† The giant had on every hand six fingers, and on every foot six toes.

† The king of Israel and the king of Judah sat either of them on his throne.

* *Each* relates to two or more objects, and signifies both of the two, or every one of any number taken singly.

† *Every* relates to more than two objects, and signifies each of them taken individually.—It may be followed by a plural noun when the objects are taken collectively. Thus, it is quite correct to say, *Every six months*.

Either signifies the one or the other, but not both. *Neither* imports

neither.
† *Each* is sometimes improperly used instead of *both*; as, The city stands on *either* side of the river Thames, instead of, on *both* sides of the river.

R
are c
and
as of
that

W
this t
Relig
gion
them
ishab
Hone
this e
it. I
produ
heat,
it, an
and s
heat h
*

high
for hi
for h
cheer
as an
Body
its wa
into th

* *Form*
alike in b
That ar
applied to
the repeti

RULE XXVIII. *When two persons or things are contrasted, that refers to the first mentioned, and this to the last; as, Virtue and vice are as opposite to each other as light and darkness; that ennobles the mind, this debases it.*

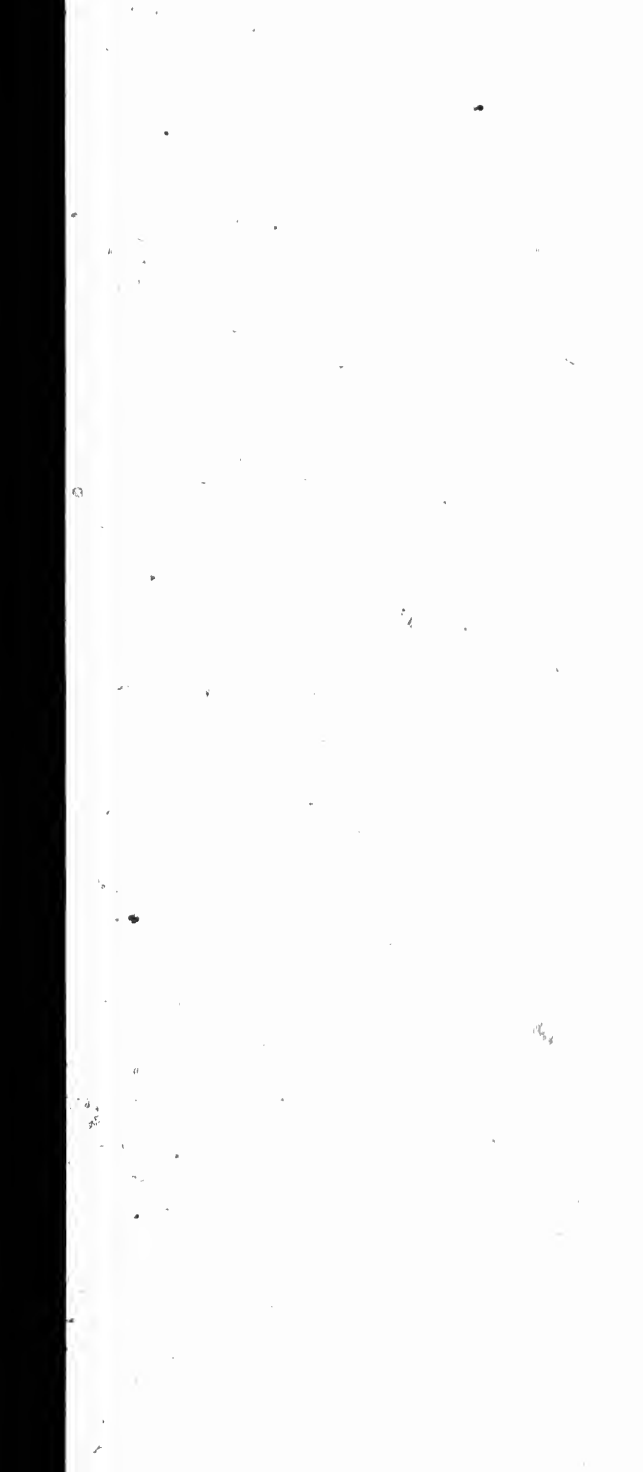
EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Wealth and poverty are both temptations; this tends to excite pride, that discontentment. Religion raises men above themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a poor-pitiable speck of perishable earth, this exalts them to the skies. Honesty and dishonesty are opposite qualities; this enhances a man's character, that degrades it. Black and white are opposite colours, and produce opposite effects; the latter absorbs heat, and is therefore cold: the former reflects it, and is therefore warm:—hence we use shirts and sheets of white, because they keep the heat better.

* Moses and Solomon were men of the highest renown; the latter was remarkable for his meekness, the former was renowned for his wisdom. I have always preferred cheerfulness to mirth; the former I consider as an act, the latter as a habit of the mind. Body and soul must part; the former wings its way to its almighty source, the latter drops into the dark and noisome grave.

* *Former and latter* are often used instead of *that and this*. They are alike in both numbers.

That and this are seldom applied to persons; but *former and latter* are applied to persons and things indiscriminately. In most cases, however, the repetition of the noun is preferable to either of them.



RULE XXIX. *In the use of verbs and words, that in point of time relate to each other, the order of time must be observed; for example, I remember him these many years, should be, I have remembered him, &c.**

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I know that worthy family more than twenty years, and they continue to honour me with their friendship all that time. The next new-year's day I shall be at school three years. The court laid hold on all the opportunities which the weakness or necessities of princes afford it, to extend its authority. He studies hard that he might have a well informed mind. His sickness was so great, that I often feared he would have died before our arrival. It has long been known that the ford could be safely taken only in summer.

† I always intended to have rewarded my son according to his merit. We have done no more than it was our duty to have done. From the little conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of letters. It was a pleasure to have received his approbation of my labours. I intended to have written you last week.—

‡ I have been at London last year. He has been told three months ago not to tell lies. He has done it before. He has lately lost an only son.

* The best general rule that can be given, is *To observe what the sense necessarily requires.*

† Rule. *After the Past Tense, the present infinitive (and not the perfect) should be used; as, I intended to write to my father, and not, I intended to have written:—for however long it now is since I thought of writing, to write was then present to me, and must still be considered as present when I bring back that time, and the thoughts of it.*

‡ See page 25, Middle.—Key, p. 121.

R
of a
word
at th
He s

TH
as he
condu
tor's,
Beyo
societ
and p
This
apost
as you
* H

no rea
him,
whats
appear
might
minist
subjec
way of
attain
† W
sorrow

* Rule.
position of
cast his ey
I think
say, Howev
† Whoev
will never

RULE XXX. *It is improper to place a clause of a sentence between a possessive case and the word which usually follows it; thus, He slept at the Duke's, as it is called, Arms; should be, He slept at the Duke's Arms, as it is called.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They very justly condemned the prodigal's, as he was called, senseless and extravagant conduct. They implicitly obeyed the protector's, as they called him, imperious mandates. Beyond this, the arts cannot be traced of civil society. These are David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people's psalms. This is Paul's, the Christian hero, and great apostle of the Gentiles' advice. The last month, as you know, of the year is December.

* Howsoever beautiful they appear, they have no real merit. In whatsoever light we view him, his conduct will bear inspection. On whatsoever side they are contemplated, they appear to advantage. Howsoever much he might despise the maxims of the king's administration, he kept a total silence on that subject. No man should voluntarily go in the way of temptation, howsoever high his previous attainments in virtue.

† Whoso is habitually idle will at last feel sorrow and regret.

* Rule. Whichsoever and whatsoever are often divided by the interposition of the corresponding word; thus, On whichever side the king cast his eyes: *Should be, On which side soever the king, &c.*

I think this rule unnecessary, if not improper.—It would be better to say, *However beautiful, &c.* See my reasons, Key, p. 123, Nos. 247-8-9.

† *Whoso* is an old word used instead of *he that*; as, *Whoso is indolent will never be happy*; it should be, *He that, &c.*

RULE XXXI. *Before names of places.*

To—is used after a verb of motion; as, *We went to Spain.*

At—is used after the verb *to be*; as, *I was at Leith.*

In—is used before names of countries and large cities; as, *I live in England, in London.*

At—is used before villages, towns, and foreign cities; as, *He resided at Gretna Green; at Leeds; at Rome.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They have just arrived in Leith, and are going to Dublin. They will reside two months at England. I have been to London, after having resided at France; and I now live in Bath. I was in the place appointed long before any of the rest. We touched in Liverpool on our way for New York. He resides in Mavisbank in Scotland. She has lodgings at George Square.*

† Ah! unhappy thee, who are deaf to the calls of duty and of honour. O happy ‡ us, surrounded with so many blessings. Woe's he, for he is a confirmed drunkard.

* One inhabitant of a city, speaking of another's residence, says, *He stays in Bank Street*; or if the word *number* be used, *at No.* — Princes Street.—K. 186-8.

† Rule. The interjections *Oh!* and *Ah!* &c. generally require the objective case of the first personal pronoun, and the nominative of the second; as, *Ah me! O thou fool! O ye hypocrites! Woe's thou,* would be improper; it should be, *Woe's thee*; that is, *Woe is to thee.*

‡ Interjections sometimes require the objective case after them, but they never govern it. In the first edition of this Grammar, I followed Mr Murray and others in leaving *we*, in the exercises, to be turned into *us*; but that it would be *we*, and not *us*, is obvious; because it is the *Nom.* to *are* understood; Thus, *Oh happy are we*, or *Oh we are happy* (being) surrounded with so many blessings.

As interjections, owing to quick feelings, express only the emotion of the mind, without stopping to mention the circumstances that produced them; many of the phrases in which they occur are very elliptical, and therefore a verb or preposition must be understood. *Me*, for instance, in *Ah me*, is governed by *befallen* or *upon* understood; Thus, *Ah*, what mischief has *befallen* me, or *come upon* me.

Oh is used to express the emotion of pain, sorrow, or surprise.

O is used to express wishing, exclamation, or a direct address to a person.

R
be fo
Accu
Abho
Acqu
Adap
Agre
Aven
Best
Boas
Call
Char
Conf
Conf
Comp
Cons
Conv
Depe
Dero
Die
Diffe
Diffi
Dimi
Disap
Disap
Disco
Disse
Eng
Enge
* Boo
† The
lows th
dispose
Dis
Of
Many
other m
of, to k
begin e

RULE XXXII. *Certain words and phrases must be followed with appropriate prepositions; such be,*

Accuse of	Exception from
Abhorrence of	Expert at or in
Acquit of	Fall under
Adapt to	Free from
Agreeable to	Glad of or at—p. 115, b.
Averse to— ^{see} p. 115, b.	Independent of
Bestow upon or on	Insist upon
Boast or brag of*	Made of
Call on or for—p. 114, b.	Marry to
Change for	Martyr for
Confide in †	Need of
Conformable to	Observance of
Compliance with	Prejudice against
Consonant to	Profit by
Conversant with, in—p. 115, b.	Provide with
Dependent upon or on—	Reconcile to
Derogation from [p. 114, b.]	Reduce under or to—p. 115, a.
Die of or by	Regard to
Differ from	Replete with
Difficulty in	Resemblance to
Diminution of	Resolve on
Disappointed in or of—p. 151.	Sswerve from
Disapprove of ‡	Taste for or of—p. 152.
Discouragement to	Think of or on—p. 114, b.
Dissent from	True to
Eager in	Wait on
Engage in	Worthy of §

* *Boast* is often used without *of*; as, For if I have boasted anything.

† The same preposition that follows the verb or *adverb* generally follows the *noun* which is derived from it; as, Confide *in*, confidence *in*; disposed *to* tyrannize, a disposition *to* tyranny; independently *of*.

‡ *Disapprove* and *approve* are frequently used without *of*.

§ *Of* is sometimes omitted, and sometimes inserted after *worthy*.

Many of these words take other prepositions after them to express other meanings; thus, for example, Fall *in*, to concur, to comply. Fall *off*, to forsake. Fall *out*, to happen. Fall *upon*, to attack. Fall *to*, to begin eagerly to eat; to apply himself *to*. Fall *from*, to revolt from.

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

He was totally* dependent of the papal crown. He accused the minister for betraying the Dutch. You have bestowed your favours to the most deserving persons. His abhorrence to gaming was extreme. I differ with you. The English were very different then, to what they are now. In compliance to his father's advice. I dissent with the judgment of the court. It is no discouragement for the authors. The wisest princes need not think it any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency, to rely upon counsel. Is it consonant with our nature? Conformable with this plan. Agreeable with the sacred text. Call for your uncle.†

The river abounds with trout. He had no regard for his father's commands. Thy prejudice to my cause. It is more than they thought for.‡ There is no need for it. Reconciling himself with the king. No resemblance with each other. Upon such occasions as fell into their cognizance. I am engaged with writing. We profit from experience. He swerved out of the path. He is resolved in going to the Persian court. Expert of his work.

* *Dependent, dependence, &c.* are spelled indifferently with *a* or *e* in the last syllable.

† *Call for*—is to demand, to require. *Call on*, is to pay a short visit; to request; as, While you call on him—I shall call for a bottle of wine.

‡ The authorities for *think of* and *think on* are nearly equal. The latter, however, abounds more in the Scriptures than the former; as, Think on me when it shall be well with thee: Think upon me for good: Whatsoever things are true, &c. think on these things. But *think of* is perhaps more common in modern publications.

Expe
the v
them
seems

He
he co
it. I
He ac
are co
in the
with
the p
for th
He is
comp
fashio
are ex
marty
better
exact
correc
finds
was n
is bre

* Red
reduce
† We
among
worldly
‡ Glad
gained
Jonah
tunes
? Aven
both are

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

Expert on deceiving. The Romans reduced the world* to their own power. He provided them of every thing. We insist in it. He seems to have a taste in such studies.

He died for thirst. He found none on whom he could safely confide. He was accused for it. It was very well adapted for the purpose. He acquitted me from any imputation. You are conversant† with that science. They boast in their great riches. Call of James to walk with you. When we have had a true taste for the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish for those of vice. I rejoice in your success. He is glad of accidents.‡ She is glad at his company. A strict observance after times and fashions. This book is replete in errors. These are exceptions to the general rule. He died a martyr to Christianity. This change is to the better. His productions were scrupulously exact, and conformable with all the rules of correct writing. He died of the sword. She finds a difficulty of fixing her mind. This prince was naturally averse§ from war. A freeholder is bred with an aversion from subjection.

* Reduce under is to subdue. In other cases to follows it; as, To reduce to practice, to fractions, &c.

† We say conversant with men in things. Addison has conversant among the writings of the most polite authors, and conversant about worldly affairs. Conversant with is preferable.

‡ Glad of is perhaps more proper, when the cause of joy is something gained or possessed; and glad at, when something befalls another; as, Jonah was exceedingly glad of the gourd; He that is glad at the misfortunes of others rarely escapes misfortune himself.

§ Averse and aversion require to after them rather than from; but both are used, and sometimes even by the same author.

RULE XXXIII. All the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other, and a regular and dependent construction throughout be carefully preserved.* For example, the sentence, "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cinthio," is inaccurate; because *more* requires *than* after it, which is nowhere found in the sentence. It *should be*, He was more beloved *than* Cinthio, but not so much admired.

A proper choice of words, and a perspicuous arrangement, should be carefully attended to.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The reward is his due, and it has²⁹ already, or will hereafter, be given to him. He was guided by interests always different³², sometimes contrary to those of the community. The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay of many, might³⁰ and probably were good. No person was ever so perplexed¹¹, or sustained²⁵ mortifications as he has done to-day. He was more bold and active²⁶, but not so wise and studious as his companion. Ye will not study your lessons diligently, that ye might³⁰ be esteemed, commended, and rewarded. Sincerity is as valuable¹¹, and even more valuable²⁶, than knowledge. The greatest masters of critical learning differ³² among one another.

But from this dreary period the recovery of the empire was become desperate; no wisdom could obviate its decadence. He was at one time thought to be a supposititious child.

* This rule is scarcely of any value as a rule; for every sentence on this page, except the last two, may be corrected by the preceding rules, as the reference by small figures will show; but it has been retained, because, where two words require a different construction, it will tend to correct the common error of forgetting the construction of the former word, and adhering to that of the latter.

Ru
noun
in bot
The
species
The
article
reader
To
but it

Re
passi
the n
best
We n
rewar
or the
Purit
its inf
as to f
racter.
reprim
never
father,
† H
little a
of ord
the off

* The is
when comp
thus, The
more grate
† A nice
sion of the
him a little

RULE XXXIV. *Of the ARTICLES.* *An* or *a* is used before nouns in the singular number only. *The** is used before nouns in both numbers.

The article is omitted before a noun that stands for a *whole species*; and before the names of minerals, metals, arts, &c.

The last of two nouns after a comparative should have no article when they both refer to *one* person; as, He is a better reader than writer.

To use the *Articles* properly, is of the greatest importance: but it is impossible to give a rule applicable to every case.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Reason was given to a man to contrōl his passions. The gold is corrupting. A man is the noblest work of the creation. Wisest and best men are sometimes betrayed into errors. We must act our part with a constancy, though reward of our constancy be distant. The odour or the smell of a body is part of the body itself. Purity has its seat in the heart: but extends its influence over so much of outward conduct, as to form the great and material part of a character. At worst, I could but incur a gentle reprimand. The profligate man is seldom or never found to be the good husband, the good father, or the beneficent neighbour.

† He has been much censured for paying a little attention to his business. So bold a breach of order called for little severity in punishing the offender.

* *The* is used before an individual representing the whole of its species, when compared with another individual representing another species; thus, *The* dog is a more grateful animal than *the* cat; *i. e.* All dogs are more grateful than cats.

† A nice distinction of the sense is sometimes made by the use or omission of the article *a*. If I say, he behaved with a little reverence; I praise him a little. If I say, he behaved with little reverence; I blame him.

RULE XXXV. An *ellipsis*, or omission of some words, is frequently admitted. Thus, instead of saying, He was a learned man, he was a wise man, and he was a good man; we say, He was a *learned, wise, and good man*.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

A house and a garden. The laws of God, and the laws of man. Avarice and cunning may acquire an estate; but avarice and cunning cannot gain friends. His crimes had brought him into extreme distress, and extreme perplexity. He has an affectionate brother and an affectionate sister. By presumption, and by vanity, we provoke enmity, and we incur contempt. Our duties require to be impressed on us by admonition, and to be recommended by example. He is temperate, he is disinterested, he is benevolent. Perseverance in laudable pursuits will reward all our toils, and will produce effects beyond our calculation. He went, not by the road, but through the fields, in the hope of thereby shortening his journey. Destitute of principle, he regarded neither his family, nor his friends, nor his reputation. He insulted every man and every woman in the company. The temper of him who is always in the bustle of the world, will be often ruffled and will be often disturbed.

* He regards his word, but thou dost not regard it. They must be punished, and they shall be punished. We succeeded, but they did not succeed.

* The auxiliaries of the compound tenses are often used alone: as, We have done it, but thou *hast* not; i. e. thou *hast* not done it.

Ru
obscu
prop
that w
and to

fortu
down
A lea
shun
for u
and r
They
The
of the
to ow
of vir
but r
Virtu
charm
or at
are m
chara
own r
ful to
sons,

* A no
disdainet
of gramm
ridiculous

† The
necessary
and an or
tion; as,

RULE XXXVI. *An ellipsis is not allowable when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety; for example, "We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen," should be, We speak that which we do know, and testify that which we have seen.*

EXERCISES.

* A noble spirit disdaineth the malice of fortune; his greatness of soul is not to be cast down. A house and † orchard. A horse and ass. A learned and amiable young man. I gladly shunned who gladly fled from me. A taste for useful knowledge will provide for us a great and noble entertainment when others leave us. They enjoy also a free constitution and laws. The captain had several men died in his ship of the scurvy. I must, however, be so candid to own I have been mistaken. The sacrifices of virtue will not only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed even in this life. Oh, piety! Virtue! how insensible have I been to thy charms! That is a property most men have, or at least may attain. There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters. Why do some men injure their own reputation by doing that which is not lawful to do? Neither has he, nor any other persons, suspected so much dissimulation.

* A noble spirit disdaineth, &c. should be, *A man of a noble spirit disdaineth, &c.* This will render the sentence consistent with the rules of grammar and with common sense; to talk of the *soul* of a *spirit* is ridiculous.

† The article being once expressed, the repetition of it becomes unnecessary, except when a different form of it is requisite; as, A house and an orchard; and when some peculiar emphasis requires a repetition; as, Not only *the* year, but *the* day and *the* hour, were appointed.

CONSTRUCTION.

The four following lines are construed by way of example. They were parsed at page 56. They are construed here, because the pupil should now be able to apply the Rules of Syntax.

Oh how stupendous was the power
That raised me with a word;
And* every day and every hour,
I lean upon the Lord.

How stupendous, adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, &c. *A power* is understood thus; *stupendous a power*; an adjective agrees with a noun. *A power*, *a* is used before nouns in the singular number only—the *power*, *the* is used before nouns in both numbers—the *power was*, a verb agrees with its nominative—the *power that*, the relative agrees with its antecedent, &c. *That raised*, a verb agrees with its nom. *Raised me*, an active verb governs the objective case—*With a word*, prepositions govern the objective—*A word—A* is used before nouns in the singular, &c. (*During* is understood) *during every day*, prepositions govern the objective case—*Every day*, an adjective agrees with a noun—*Day and hour*, conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns; for *hour* is governed by *during* understood again—*Every hour*, an adjective agrees, &c. *I lean*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*Upon the Lord*, prepositions govern the objective case.

The pronouns, *My*, *Thy*, *His*, *Her*, *Our*, *Your*, *Their*, and *Its*, must be construed exactly like nouns in the possessive case, for a pronoun is an exact resemblance of a noun in every thing but one; namely, it will not admit of an adjective before it like a noun. *His* is equal to *John's*, and *her* to *Ann's*, and *their* to the *men's*, in the following sentences.

John lost his gloves, *i. e.* John lost *John's* gloves. Ann found her book, *i. e.* Ann found *Ann's* book. The men took off their hats, *i. e.* the men took off the *men's* hats. The garden is productive, and its fruit is good, *i. e.* the *garden's* fruit. In all these cases, and in such phrases as, *my house*, *thy field—our lands—your estates—their property—whose horse*—the rule is, "When two nouns come together, signifying different things, the first is put in the possessive case."

* It is impossible to construe bad grammar. And here is so very vaguely used, that the rule, "Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns," will not apply in this passage.

† Or, how stupendous the power was; but it is certainly better to supply a power, thus; O how stupendous a power was the power that raised me with a word.

PR

Job
When
never
are hi
meeting
He da
whom
is the
blamed
has be
foot h
treme
He ac
he wh
pears
From
with n
died in
Her fa
ter req
It is no
long ar
of gain
told.
ever se

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE
RULES OF SYNTAX.

John writes pretty. Come here, James. Where are you going, Thomas? I shall never do so no more. The structure of plants are highly curious. Was you present at last meeting? He need not be in so much haste. He dare not act otherwise than he does. Him whom they seek is in the house. George or I is the person. They or he is much to be blamed. The troop consist of fifty men. She has been ill this two months. A pillar sixty foot high. His conduct evinced the most extreme vanity. These trees are remarkable tall. He acted bolder than was expected. This is he who I gave the book to. Eliza always appears amiably. She goes there to-morrow. From whence came they? Who do you lodge with now? He was born at London, but he died in Bath. If he be sincere I am satisfied. Her father and her were at church. The master requested him and I to read more distinctly. It is no more but his due. Flatterers flatter as long and no longer than they have expectations of gain. John told the same story as you told. This is the largest tree which I have ever seen.

le. They
the pupil

bra adjec-
posses- an
pre nouns
fore nouns
s nomina-
edent, &c.
ctive verb
overn the
gular, &c.
overn the
oun—Day
pronouns;
hour, an
minative—

and *It*,
case, for a
; but *one*;
s' noun.
men's, in

found her
hats, *i. e.*
re, and *its*
id in such
-their pro-
together,
case."

is so very
moods and
" will not

ter to sup-
that raised

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

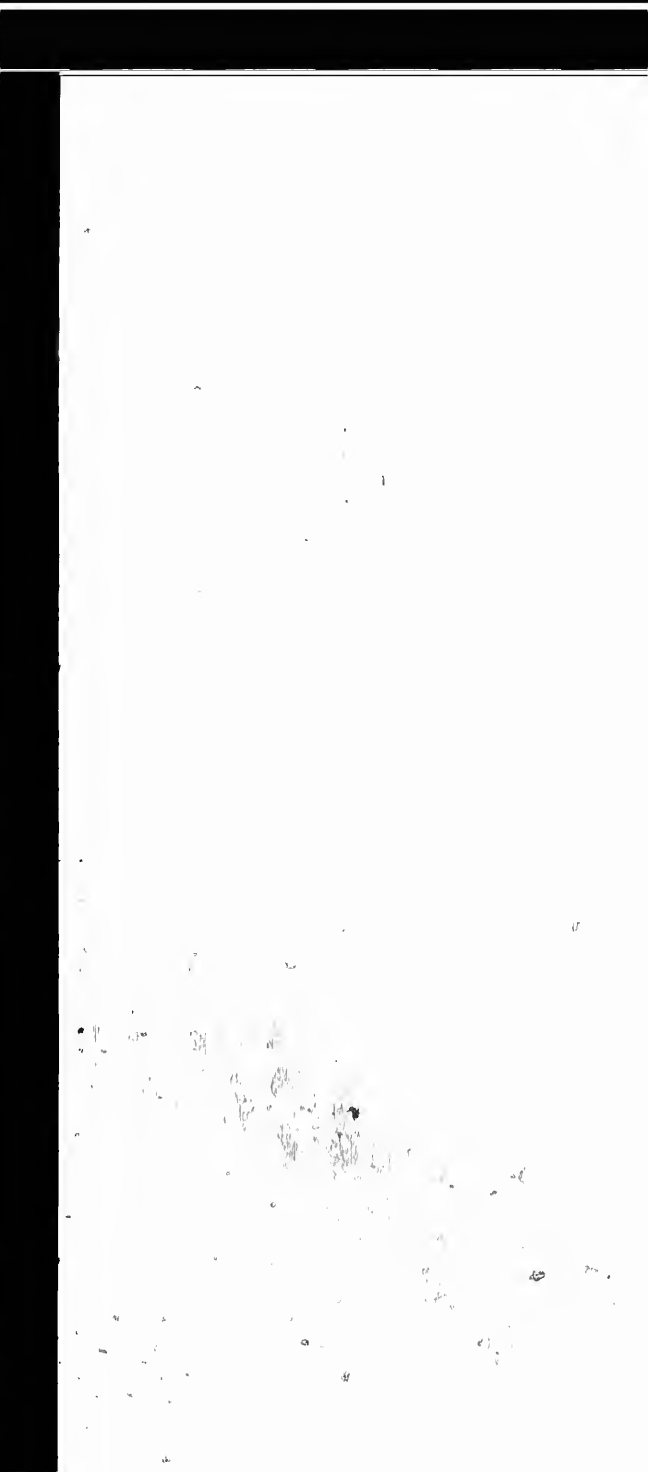
Let he and I read the next chapter. She is free of pain. Those sort of dealings are unjust. David the son of Jesse was the youngest of his brothers. You was very kind to him, he said. Well, says I, what does you think of him now? James is one of those boys that was kept in at school, for bad behaviour. Thou, James, did deny the deed. Neither good nor evil come of themselves. We need not to be afraid. He expected to have gained more by the bargain. You should drink plenty of goat milk. It was him who spoke first. Do you like ass milk? Is it me that you mean? Who did you buy your grammar from? If one takes a wrong method at first setting out, it will lead them astray. Neither man nor woman were present. I am more taller than you. She is the same lady who sang so sweetly. He was a member of the most strictest society of Christians I ever saw. Is not thy wickedness great? and thine iniquities infinite? There was more sophists than one. If a person have lived twenty or thirty years, he should have some experience. If this were his meaning, the prediction has failed. Fidelity and truth is the foundation of all justice. His associates in wickedness will not fail to mark the alteration of his conduct. My father and my mother they set me a good example.

The
Mayor
way th
if he ha
caution
ber of
lie exp
depend
he is in
self, cor
more lo
The
honour.
canst ne
quors t
but I an
contentr
riches, b
did you
father, t
found.
ment.
Three o
study di
mendabl
fear are t
reckoned
Rome cor
so long,
still be m

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

The crowd were so great that the Lord Mayor and Aldermen with difficulty made their way through them. Why find fault with a man if he have done thee no harm? I wrote to, and cautioned the captain against it. Every member of the body, every bone, joint, and muscle, lie exposed to many disorders. He acted independent in the transaction. It is not me who he is in love with. He which commands himself, commands the whole world. Nothing is more lovelier than virtue.

The peoples happiness is the statesmans honour. Changed to a worsser shape thou canst not be. I have drunk no spirituous liquors this six years. He is taller than me, but I am stronger than him. Solid peace and contentment consists neither in beauty or riches, but in the favour of Heaven. After who did you run in so much haste? I met your father, than who a worthier man is not to be found. Abuse of mercies ripen us for judgement. Peter and John is not at school to-day. Three of them was taken into custody. To study diligently, and behave genteelly, is commendable. The enemies who we have most to fear are those of our own hearts. Rēgulus was reckoned the most consummate warrior that Rome could then produce. Suppose life never so long, fresh accessions of knowledge may still be made.



PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Surely thou who reads so much in the Bible, can tell me what became of Elijah. Neither the master nor the scholars is reading. Trust not him, whom, you know, is dishonest. I love no interests but that of truth and virtue. Every one of the rebels were banished from his native country. No one can be blamed for taking due care of their health. If I had known the distress of my friend, it would be a pleasure to me to relieve him.

I have read Popes Homer, and Drydens Virgil. He that is diligent you should commend. There was an earthquake which made the earth to tremble. A simile and a metaphor is figures of speech which nearly resembles each other. I cannot commend him for justifying himself when he knows that his conduct was so very improper. He was very much made on at school. Wisdom and virtue is undoubtedly a better inheritance than gold and silver. If he is alone, tell him the news; but if there is anybody with him, do not tell him. They ride faster than us. Though the news be strange, it is not unworthy of credit. If he does but approve my endeavours, it will be an ample reward. Was it him who came last? Yes, it was him.

For ever in this humble cell,
Let thee and I, my fair one, dwell.

Before the discovery was made of America²⁰.

Ever
acter a
livered
words
sets a
Neither
loan an
him be
general
middle
vantage
Thee
serving
king c
My exe
my per
proper.
ing bet
Nothing
of duty
Who an
from, o
into the
well as
is a bo
have be
sight it
a very
thing th
come to
so much

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Every man should act suitable to his character and station in life. His speech was delivered very distinct. I only spoke three words on that subject. The ant and the bee sets a good example before drowsy boys. Neither borrow, neither lend, lest thou lose thy loan and friend. I expected to have found him better. Hannibal was one of the greatest generals whom the world ever saw. The middle station of life seems to be the most advantageously situated for gaining of wisdom.

These are the rules of grammar, by the observing which you may avoid mistakes. The king conferred on him the title of a duke. My exercises are not well wrote, I do not hold my pen well. Grammar teaches us to speak proper. She accused her companion for having betrayed her. I will not dissent with her. Nothing shall make me swerve out of the path of duty and honour. Who shall I give it to? Who are you looking for? It is a diminution from, or a derogation of his dignity. It fell into their notice or cognizance. He writes as well as me, but I read better than him. That is a book which I am much pleased with. I have been to see the coronation, and a fine sight it was. That picture of the emperor's is a very exact resemblance of him. Every thing that we here enjoy, change, decay, and come to an end. It is not him they blame so much.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

No people has more faults than they that pretend to have none. The laws of Draco is said to have been wrote with blood. It is so clear, or so obvious, as I need not explain it. She taught him and I to read. The more greater a bad man's accomplishments are, the more dangerous he is to society, and the more less fit for a companion. All have their faults, and each should endeavour to correct their own. Let your promises be few, and such that you can perform.

His being at enmity with Cæsar and Antony were the cause of perpetual discord. Their being forced to their books when out of school and tired with study, have been the reason why many have hated books all their lives. There was a coffee-house at that end of the town, in which several gentlemen used to meet of an evening. Do not despise the state of the poor, lest it becomes your own condition. It was his duty to have interposed his authority in an affair of so much importance. He spent his whole life in the doing good. Art thou the traveller who discoveredst these interesting remains? The winter has not been so severe as we expected it to have been. When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune overtake us, the character and kindness of our friends is put to the test. Whoever said so, he has told a falsehood.

A
them
were
and I,
their
of tha
him, th
a weigh
one sh
Melanc
former
This j
enough
ten is o
beauty,
to othe
us, it i
chased
was not
Who
Who lo
this?
verbs in
in opini
ye, I ha
and Ar
If we c
the heal
is the gr
man ma
picture,

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A lampoon, or a satire, does not carry in them robbery or murder. Neither you nor she were mistaken in her conjectures. My sister and I, as well as my brother, are employed in their respective occupations. He repents him of that indiscreet action. It was me, and not him, that wrote it. A clock cannot go without a weight or spring. I shall take care that no one shall suffer no injury. Both Luther and Melancthon were sincere and zealous Reformers; but Luther was the most intrepid. This jackanāpes has hit me in a right place enough. Two times two is four. Ten times ten is one hundred. It is her riches, not her beauty, that attracts so many suitors. To do to others as we would that they should do to us, it is our duty. This grammar was purchased at Ogle's the bookseller's. The council was not unanimous.

Who spilt the ink upon the table? Him. Who lost this book? Me. Whose pen is this? Johns. There is in fact no impersonal verbs in any language. He differs very much in opinion with his brother. Had I never seen ye, I had never known ye. The ship Mary and Ann were restored to their owners. If we consult the improvement of mind, or the health of body, it is well known exercise is the great instrument for promoting both. A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a poem.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

I had no sooner placed her at my right hand, by the fire, but she opened to me the reason of her visit. A prudent wife, she shall be blessed. The house you speak of, it cost me five hundred pounds. Steady application, as well as genius, are necessary to eminence in the fine arts. Not only the counsel's and attorney's, but the judge's opinion also favoured his cause. It was the men's, women's, and children's lot, to suffer great calamities. Leaves serve the same purpose in the vegetable world, which lungs do amongst animals. This palace had been the grand Sultan's Mahomet. This clock is seldom or ever right. Though he behave never so well.

* I am purposed. He is arrived. They are deserted from their regiment. Whose works are these? They are Cicero, the most eloquent of men's. The mighty rivals are now at length agreed. The time of William making the experiment at length arrived. Let them be whom they may, we will boldly confront them. The group of islands were soon in sight. This picture of the king's does not much resemble him. These pictures of the king were sent to him from Italy. He who committed the offence, thou shouldst correct, not I, who am innocent.

* Rule. It is improper to use a neuter verb in the passive form. Thus, I am purposed—He is arrived: should be, I have purposed—He has arrived.—From this rule there are a number of exceptions; for it is allowable to say, He is come. She is gone, &c.

But
dymus
time.
cheque
make
returne
dressed
words.
in his
tors di
so pop
able w
censure
No
subject,
advocat
were st
they be
The hou
spoke w
rogative
or the
their gr
and hun
satisfied
to have
princes.
what the
masterly
in Spens
conspirac

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with the disciples at that time. These are observations, that a long and chequered pilgrimage have enabled me to make on man. After I visited Europe, I returned to America. To us is now addressed in the gospels our blessed Saviour's words. In his conduct was treachery, and in his words faithless professions. The orators did not forget to enlarge themselves on so popular a subject. He acted conformable with his instructions, and cannot be censured justly.

No person could speak stronger on this subject, nor behave nobler, than our young advocate, for the cause of toleration. They were studious to ingratiate with those who they believed to be the chief men of the tribe. The house framed a remonstrance, where they spoke with great freedom of the king's prerogative. Neither flatter or condemn the rich or the great. Many would exchange gladly their grandeur and riches, for that more quiet and humbler station, which thou art now dissatisfied with. He esteemed it a high honour to have been allowed to converse with the princes. Many persons will not believe but what they are free from prejudices. It is very masterly done. This word I have only found in Spenser. The king being apprized of the conspiracy, he fled from Jerusalem.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A too great variety of studies dissipate and confuse the mind. James was resolved to not indulge himself in such a cruel amusement. They admired the rustic's, as they called him, candour and uprightness. The pleasure or pain of one passion differ from those of another. The court of Spain, who* gave the order, were not aware of the consequences. There was much spoke and wrote on either side of the question, but I know not which of the contending parties were in the right.

Religion raises men above themselves; irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a speck of perishable earth; this gives them wings to soar to the skies. Every element seemed to conspire towards the destruction of the ship. There were rugged precipices on either side of the river. This task was the easier performed, from the cheerfulness with which he embarked on it. It is easier to build two chimneys than maintain one. As his misfortunes were the fruit of his own obstinacy, a few persons pitied him. To these terms he had no objections to comply. Riches is the bane of many, and a blessing only to a few. I wrote to my brother before I received his letter.

* Which is applied to collective nouns composed of men.—See p. 158, mid.

Wh
some
or not
darkne
Every
to per
The s
You d
tended
obstac
forter
than h
more t
rely. o
The se
the wa
who f
sanguin
kinder
request
as doc
book b
man's h
joy or
sanctity
drawn
informe
his app
era. W
Henry,
lingness

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

When Garrick appeared, Peter was for some time in doubt whether it could be him or not. Are you living contented in spiritual darkness? The company was very numerous. Every office of authority should be intrusted to persons on whom the public can confide. The shepherd was observed ascend the hill. You did not acquaint me with what you intended to have done. There remains but two obstacles to be surmounted. Nor let no comforter delight my ear. She was six years elder than him. They were obliged to contribute more than us. The Bårons had little more to rely on, besides the power of their families. The sewers (shōres) must be kept so clear, as the water may run away. Such among us who follow that profession. Nobody is so sanguine to hope for it. She behaved unkindly than I expected. Agreeable to your request I send this letter. Thomas is not as docile as his sister. There was no other book but this. He died by a fever. Every man's heart and temper is productive of much joy or bitterness. What avails professions of sanctity without a holy life? The army were drawn up in haste. The public is respectfully informed, that, &c. His uneasiness, not to say his apprehensions, were shared by his followers. Who art thou who would oppose the king? Henry, though at first he showed an unwillingness, yet afterwards he granted his request.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Him and her live very happily together. She invited Jane and I to see her new dress. She uttered such cries that pierced the heart of every one who heard them. Maria is not as clever as her sister Ann. Though he promises ever so solemnly, I will not believe him. The full moon was no sooner up in its brightness, but she turned the dark waters of the lake into a mirror of silver. It rendered the progress very slow of the new invention. This book is Thomas', that is James'. Socrates's wisdom has been the subject of many a conversation. Fare thee well, James. Who, who has the judgement of a man, would have drawn such an inference? George was the most diligent scholar whom I ever knew. I have observed some children to use deceit. He durst not to displease his master. I trust I shall profit from your advice and by your example. Several of our English words, some centuries ago, had different meanings to those they have now. Take not away the life* you cannot give. With this booty he made off to a distant part of the country, where he had reason to believe that neither he nor his master were known. You should be happy; for yours is health, wealth, and wisdom too. I have been at London. Which is likely to tell the true time—the railway clock or your watch? Thompson, the watchmaker and the jeweller, from London were of the party.

Wh
esteem
they a
with a
lash th
howev
The d
always
was co
more u
ent th
pleasur
some b
courses
reprove
that re
peace v
She
her ma
of their
nothing
girls al
he had
and the
from th
fucius's
dangero

* The Po
quotation f
should hav
cratese, the

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Which of the two masters shall we most esteem? He who commends his scholars when they are diligent, and strives to inspire them with a generous emulation, or another who will lash them severely for every mistake or blunder, however slight, into which they have fallen? The doctor, in his last lecture, said that fever always produced thirst. Every person who was consulted were of this opinion. Mankind is more united by the bonds of friendship at present than it was formerly. The most perfect pleasures in this world are always mingled with some bitterness. The excellence of many discourses consist in their brevity. If you are reproved for your faults, be not angry with him that reproves you; but thank him for it. Your peace will be more unbroken.

She always behaved with great severity to her maids; and if any of them were negligent of their duty, or made a slip in their conduct, nothing would serve her but burying the poor girls alive. He had no master to instruct him; he had read nothing but the writings of Moses and the prophets, and had received no lessons from the Socrates's,* the Plato's, and the Confucius's of the age. There is no disease as dangerous as the want of common sense.

* The *Possessive case* must not be used for the *plural number*. In this quotation from Baron Haller's Letters to his Daughter, the proper names should have been pluralized like common nouns; thus, From the *Socrateses*, the *Platoes*, and the *Confuciuses* of the age.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

If it were not for the Bible and the pulpit, most of us would be still as ignorant of the true God and eternal life, if not more ignorant, than the idolaters of ancient Greece and Rome.

Every man that counts his minutes, and lets no part of time pass, without making a right use of it, him shalt thou imitate.

The Duke had not behaved with that loyalty as was expected.

Milton seems to have been well acquainted with his own genius, and known what it was that nature had bestowed upon him more bountifully than upon others.

John did not meet us at the hour he himself had appointed. We were shocked at his want of punctuality, and would afterwards have asked the cause.

He sought delights of a much more inferior and unprofitable nature. I saw nobody there which I knew, though, agreeable to your instructions, I have been constantly observant of all around me.

Here rages force, here tremble flight and fear.
Here stormed contention, and here fury frowned.

The Crétan javelin reach'd him from afar,
And pierced his shoulder as he mounts his car.

— Hé only* promised me a loan of the book for two days. I was once thinking to have written a poem.

* This sentence expresses one meaning as it stands. It may be made to express other four by placing *only* after *me*, or *loan*, or *book*, or *days*.

A s
to get
times
as cle

In h
style,

No
tive or
served
peevish
his opi
if he a
or quib

Thou
of buyi
is equa

The

A

For

A

Ther
the min
discreti

We r
distant
having
to the D
these th
with th
very sho

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A slow but attentive child will often be found to get lessons by heart as soon as, nay sometimes sooner, than one who, though ten times as clever, is less industrious.

In his writings there are not only beauty of style, but originality of thought.

No man is likely to prove either an instructive or an agreeable companion, if he be reserved and taciturn; if he be fretful and peevish; if he be positive and dogmatical in his opinions; if he be given to self-display; if he affect wit, and is full of puns, or quirks, or quibbles.

Though he has neither books or the means of buying them, still, as far as I can judge, he is equal to most of us in general information.

Then finish, dear Chloe, this pastoral war,
And let us, like Horace and Lydia, agree;
For thou art a girl as much brighter than her,
As he was a poet sublimer than me.

There are many more shining qualities in the mind of man, but there is none so useful as discretion.

We need not leave home and to traverse distant lands, to find marvels. Mr. Locke having been introduced by Lord Shaftesbury to the Duke of Buckingham and Lord Halifax, these three noblemen, instead of conversing with the philosopher on literary subjects, in a very short time sat down to cards.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.

They proposed to divide equally the spoil.

To man has been given the power of speech only.

It is your light fantastic fools, who have neither heads nor hearts, in both sexes, who, by dressing their bodies out of all shape, render themselves ridiculous and contemptible.

And how can brethren hope to partake of their parent's blessing that curse each other?

The superiority of others over us, though in trivial concerns, never fails to mortify our vanity, and give us vexation, as Nicôle admirably observes.

Noah, for his godliness, and his family, were the only persons preserved from the Flood.

What hinge could the most skilful workman contrive that might be used as often and for so long a term of years without being disordered or worn out, as our elbow-joint.

The sun is larger greatly than this whole earth, though seemingly smaller than the dial it illuminates.

A great stone that I happened to find, after a long search, by the seashore, served me for an anchor.

It is true what he says, but it is not applicable to the point.

On going to bed, we feel the blankets warm, on a winter night, and the sheets cold.

The
it sho
groun
where
Th
years
after
Up
Empe
tion,
who s
Gal
again
revok
publis
before
The
his da
Pomp
But
compli
min w
both h
partne
Aur
and ter
vaded

* The
of Gold
It is am
made.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.*

The senate of Rome ordered that no part of it should be rebuilt; it was demolished to the ground, so that travellers are unable to say where Carthage stood at this day.

Thus ended the war with Antiochus, twelve years after the second Punic war, and two after it had been begun.

Upon the death of Claudius, the young Emperor, Nero, pronounced his funeral oration, and he was canonized among the gods, who scarcely deserved the name of a man.

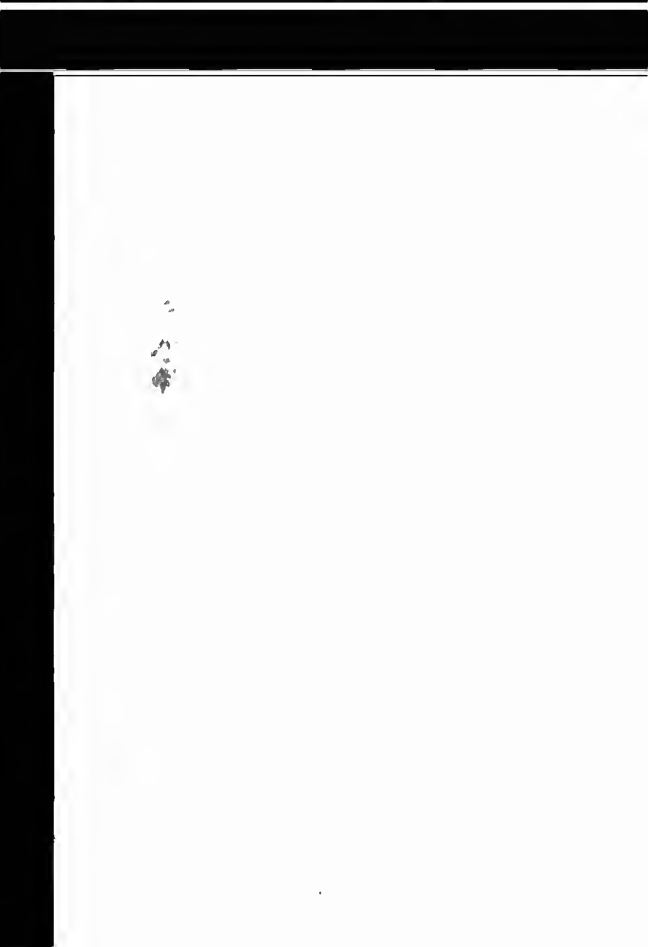
Galërius abated much of his severities against the Christians on his death-bed, and revoked those edicts which he had formerly published, tending to their persecution, a little before his death.

The first care of Aurëlius was to marry his daughter Lucilla once more to Claudius Pompëianus, a man of moderate fortune, &c.

But at length, having made his guards accomplices in their designs, they set upon Maximin while he slept at noon in his tent, and slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire, without any opposition.

Aurëlian defeated the Marcomanni, a fierce and terrible nation of Germany, that had invaded Italy, in three several engagements.

* The exercises on this page are all extracted from the octavo edition of Goldsmith's Roman History, from which many more might be got. It is amazing how many mistakes even our most popular authors have made.



AMBIGUITY.

You suppose him younger than I.

This may mean, either that you suppose him younger than I am, or that you suppose him to be younger than I suppose him to be.

Parmênio had served with great fidelity Philip, the father of Alexander, as well as himself, for whom he first opened the way into Asia.

Here we are apt to suppose the word *himself* refers to Parmênio, and means that he had not only served Philip, but he had served himself at the same time. This however is not the meaning of the passage. If we arrange it thus, the meaning will appear. "Parmênio had not only served Philip the father of Alexander with great fidelity, but he had served *Alexander himself*, and was the first that opened the way for him into Asia.

Belisarius was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First, a man of rare valour.

Who was a man of rare valour? The *emperor Justinian*, we should suppose, from the arrangement of the words; but this is not the case, for it was *Belisarius*. The sentence should have stood thus, "Belisarius, a man of rare valour, was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First."

Lisias promised to his father never to abandon his friends.

Whether were they his own friends or his *father's* whom Lisias promised never to abandon? If his *own*, it should be, "Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *my friends*. If his *father's*, it should be, Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *your friends*."

Tau
fully e

The †
Whenever
I saw it
He was
Give m
They b
I never
You mu
First of
Before l
He plun
Read fro
Lift † u
This wa
I ran aft
I cannot
Learn †
Where s
We mus
I found
Smoke a
We hasti
He raisec
We were
It should
As soon a
I leave to

At
fell to wor
chalked o
self same,
upon. —
enough; a
matter—w

† The wo
ft is superfi

TAUTOLOGY.

Tautology, or the repetition of a thought or word, already fully expressed, is improper.

EXAMPLES.

- The † *latter end* of that man shall be peace.
 Whenever I try to improve, I † *always* find I can do it.
 I saw it in *here*—I saw it *here*.
 He was † in *here* yesterday when I spoke to him.
 Give me *both of them* books—Give me *both those* books.*
 They *both* met—They met.
 I *never* fail to read, *whenever* I can get a book—*When*.
 You must *return* † *back* immediately.
First of all I shall say my lesson—*First* I shall say, &c.
 Before I do that, I must † *first* finish this.
 He *plunged* † *down* into the water.
 Read from *here* to *there*—From *this* place to *that*.
Lift † *up* your book. He mentioned it † *over* again.
 This was the luckiest accident of *all* † *others*.
 I ran after him a little way; but soon returned † *back* † *again*.
 I cannot tell † *for* why he did it.
 Learn † *from* hence to study the Scriptures diligently.
 Where shall I begin † *from* when I read.
 We must do this *last* † *of* † *all*. Hence † *therefore*, I say.
 I found nobody † *else* but him there.
 Smoke *ascends* † *up* into the clouds.
 We hastily *descended* † *down* from the mountain.
 He *raised* † *up* his arm to strike me.
 We were † *mutually* friendly to each other.
 It should † *ever* be your constant study to do good.
 As soon as I awoke I *rose* † *up* and dressed myself.
 I leave town in the † *latter end* of July.

☞ Avoid the following vulgar phrases.—Behoof, behest, fell to work, wherewithal, quoth he, do away with, long winded, chalked out, pop out, must needs, got rid of, handed down, self same, pell mell, that's your sort, tip him the wink, pitched upon. — *Subject matter* is a tautological phrase. — *Subject* is enough; as, The *subject* of this discourse: and not the *subject matter*—which is harsh and vulgar.

† The word immediately after the dagger is to be omitted, because it is superfluous. * These, if the person has them in his hand.

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

My every hope,— <i>should be</i> ,	<i>All my hopes.</i>
Frequent opportunity.	Frequent <i>opportunities.</i>
Who finds him in money?	Who finds him money?
He put it in his pocket.	He put it <i>into</i> his pocket.
No less than fifty persons.	No <i>fewer</i> than fifty persons.
The two first steps are new.	The <i>first two</i> steps are new.
The three last verses.	The <i>last three</i> verses.
Be that as it will.	Be that as it <i>may.</i>
About two years back.	About two years <i>ago.</i>
He was to come as this day.	He was to come <i>this day.</i>
They retreated back.	They retreated.
It lays on the table.	It <i>lies</i> on the table.
I turned them topsy turvy.	I <i>overset</i> them.
I caught it.	I <i>caught</i> it.
How does thee do?	How <i>dost thou</i> do?
Overseer over his house.	Overseer <i>of</i> his house.
Opposite the church.	Opposite <i>to</i> the church.
Provisions were plenty.	Provisions were <i>plentiful.</i>
A new pair of gloves.	A <i>pair of new</i> gloves.
A young beautiful woman.	A beautiful young woman.
Where do you come from?	<i>Whence</i> do you come?
Where are you going?	<i>Whither</i> are you going?
For such another fault.	For another such fault.
Of consequence.	Consequently.
Having not considered it.	Not having considered it.
I had rather not.	I <i>would</i> rather not.
For good and all.	Totally and completely.
This here house, says I.	This house, <i>said</i> I.
Where is it? says I to him.	Where is it? <i>said</i> I to him.
I propose to visit them.	I <i>purpose</i> to visit them.
He spoke contemptibly of me.	He spoke <i>contemptuously</i> of me.
It is apparent.	It is <i>obvious.</i>
In its primary sense.	In its <i>primitive</i> sense.
I heard them <i>pro</i> and <i>con.</i>	I heard <i>both sides.</i>
I an't hungry.	I <i>am not</i> hungry.
I want a scissors.	I want a <i>pair of</i> scissors.
A new pair of shoes.	A <i>pair of new</i> shoes.
I saw him some ten years ago.	I saw him ten years ago.
I met in with him.	I <i>met with</i> him.
The subject matter.	The subject. (<i>See p. 139 near dot.</i>)
I add one more reason.	I add <i>one reason more.</i>
He was in eminent danger.	In <i>imminent.</i>

Do you
His pu
The wo
in bo
They g
It is not
A letter
He is m
He beha
The poo
There w
He has l
A momen
You will
Several
He did it
He does
An honest
At the ex
If I had e
Have you
The cock
Are you a
Were you
Direct you
He and I
He took a
He was lo
That milit
If I am ne
You may l
He propos
He pled hi
Have ye pl
I shall noti
I think mu
Will I help
They ware
Will we see
She thinks
It is not mu
They are all

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

- Do you mind how many chapters are in Job?—*remember.*
 His public character is undeniable—*unexceptionable.*
 The wool is cheaper;—but the cloth is as dear as ever—*omit the*
in both places.
 They gained five shillings the piece by it—*a piece.*
 It is not worth a sixpence—*sixpence.*
 A letter conceived in the following words—*expressed.*
 He is much difficulted—*at a loss; puzzled.*
 He behaved in a very gentlemanly manner—*gentleman-like, or by*
The poor boy was ill-guided—ill-used.
 There was a great many company—*much company.*
 He has been misfortunate—*unfortunate.*
 A momentous circumstance—*momentous.*
 You will some day repent it—*one day repent of it.*
 Several were of that opinion—*several, i. e. several persons.*
 He did it in an *overly* manner—*in a careless.*
 He does everything pointedly—*exactly.*
 An honestlike man—*A tall good-looking man.*
 At the expiry of his lease—*expiration.*
 If I had ever so much in my offer—*choice.*
 Have you any word to your brother?—*message.*
 The cock is a noisy beast—*fowl.*
 Are you acquaint with him?—*acquainted.*
 Were you crying on me?—*calling.*
 Direct your letters to me at Mr. B.'s, Edinburgh—*address.*
 He and I never cast out—*never quarrel.*
 He took a fever—*was seized with a fever.*
 He was lost in the river—*drowned (if the body was got).*
 That militates against your doctrine—*operates.*
 If I am not mistaken—*if I mistake not.*
 You may lay your account with opposition—*you may expect.*
 He proposes to buy an estate—*purposes.*
 He pled his own cause—*pleaded.*
 Have ye plished your house?—*furnished.*
 I shall notice a few particulars—*mention.*
 I think much shame—*I am much ashamed.*
 Will I help you to a bit of beef?—*shall.*
 They wared their money to advantage—*laid out.*
 Will we see you next week?—*shall.*
 She thinks long to see him—*She longs to see him.*
 It is not much worth—*it is not worth much.*
 They are all at issue—*at variance.*

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

Is he going to the school?— <i>to school.</i>	Go and pull berries— <i>gather.</i>
He has got the cold— <i>a cold.</i>	Pull roses— <i>pluck or gather.</i>
Say the grace— <i>say grace.</i>	To harry a nest— <i>rob.</i>
I cannot go the day— <i>to-day.</i>	He begins to make rich— <i>grow.</i>
A four square table— <i>a square table.</i>	Mask the tea— <i>in fuse.</i>
He is cripple— <i>lame.</i>	I was maltreated— <i>ill used.</i>
Get my big coat— <i>great coat.</i>	He wants much— <i>stammers.</i>
Hard fish— <i>dried fish.</i>	I see'd him yesterday— <i>saw.</i>
A novel fashion— <i>new fashion.</i>	A house to set— <i>to be let</i> —K. p. 86. b.
He is too precipitant— <i>hasty.</i>	Did you tell upon him— <i>inform.</i>
Roasted cheese— <i>toasted.</i>	Come here— <i>hither.</i>
Go over the bridge— <i>along.</i>	A house to sell— <i>to be sold</i> —K. p. 86.
Sweet butter— <i>fresh.</i>	I knowed that— <i>knew.</i>
I have a sore head— <i>headache.</i>	That dress sets her— <i>becomes.</i>
A stupenduous work— <i>stupendous.</i>	She turned sick— <i>grew.</i>
A tremendous work— <i>tremendous.</i>	He is turned tall— <i>grown.</i>
I got timous notice— <i>timely.</i>	This here boy— <i>this boy.</i>
A summer's day— <i>summer day.</i>	It is equally the same— <i>it is the same.</i>
An oldish lady— <i>elderly.</i>	It is split new— <i>quite.</i>
A few broth— <i>some.*</i>	That there man— <i>that man.</i>
I have nothing ado— <i>to do.</i>	What pretty it is!— <i>how.</i>
Ass milk— <i>ass's.</i>	His is far neater— <i>much.</i>
Take a drink— <i>draught.</i>	That's no possible— <i>not.</i>
A pair of partridges— <i>a brace.</i>	I shall go the morn— <i>to-morrow.</i>
Six horse— <i>horses.</i>	I asked at him— <i>asked him.</i>
A milk cow— <i>milch.</i>	Is your papa in?— <i>within.</i>
Send me a swatch— <i>pattern.</i>	He was married on— <i>to.</i>
He lays in bed till nine— <i>lies.</i>	Come in to the fire— <i>nearer.</i>
I mind none of them things— <i>those.</i>	Take out your glass— <i>off.</i>
Give me them books— <i>these.</i>	I find no fault to him— <i>in.</i>
Close the door— <i>shut.</i>	Cheese and bread— <i>bread and cheese.</i>
Let him be— <i>alone.</i>	Milk and bread— <i>bread and milk.</i>
Call for James— <i>on</i> —p. 114 † b.	Don't sit on the door— <i>near.</i>
Chap louder— <i>knock.</i>	Come, say away— <i>come, proceed.</i>
I find no pain— <i>feel.</i>	Do bidding— <i>be obedient.</i>
I mean to summons— <i>summon.</i>	He is a widow— <i>widower.</i>
Will I help you?— <i>shall.</i>	He stops there— <i>stays, dwells, lodges.</i>
Shall James come again?— <i>will.</i>	Shall they return soon?— <i>will.</i>
He has a timber leg— <i>a wooden.</i>	Will we go home now?— <i>shall.</i>
I an't angry— <i>I am not.</i>	He misguides his book— <i>abuses.</i>
That there house— <i>that house.</i>	He don't do it well— <i>does not.</i>
I differ with you— <i>from.</i>	That stone lays well— <i>lies.</i>
I have ate enough— <i>eaten.</i>	I dissent with you— <i>from.</i>
Call for your uncle— <i>upon.</i>	I will stay at home— <i>shall.</i>
He has risen the price— <i>raised.</i>	See that he does it— <i>do it.</i>
That is not mine's— <i>mine.</i>	Where did you lay all night— <i>lie.</i>

* Broth is always singular.—Powdered beef is beef sprinkled with salt to preserve it for a few days. Salt beef is beef properly seasoned with salt.

Addi

1. plural with the. Some couple the ver dwells duced tranqu two m plural.

2. T require denote scholar

3. M of two cond p should first pa haps; in a tor singular

4. W forms a struction the ver should h riches, n

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

Additional Remarks under the 4th Rule of Syntax.

1. When *and* is understood, the verb must be plural; as wisdom, happiness, (and) virtue, *dwell* with the golden mediocrity.

Some think, that when two singular nouns, coupled with *and*, are nearly the same in meaning, the verb may be singular; as, Tranquillity and peace *dwells* there. Ignorance and negligence *has* produced this effect. This, however, is improper; for *tranquillity* and *peace* are two nouns or names, and two make a plural; therefore the verb should be plural.

2. Two or more singular nouns coupled with *and*, require a verb in the singular number, when they denote only *one* person or thing; as, That able scholar and critic *has* been eminently useful.

3. Many writers use a plural noun after the 2d of two numeral adjectives; thus, the first and second *pages* are torn. This I think improper; it should rather be, The first and second *page*, *i. e.* the first *page* and the second *page* are torn:—*are*, perhaps; because independently of *and*, they are *both* in a torn state.—*Generation*, *hour*; and *ward* are singular in Exodus xx. 5. Matt. xx. 5. Acts xii. 10.

And and Not.

4. When *not* is joined to *and*, the negative clause forms a parenthesis, and does not affect the construction of the other clause or clauses; therefore, the verb in the following and similar sentences should be singular. Genuine piety, and not great riches, *makes* a death-bed easy; *i. e.* Genuine piety

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

makes a death-bed easy, and great riches do not make it easy. Her prudence, not her possessions, renders her an object of desire.

Every, And.

5. When the nouns coupled with *and* are qualified by the distributive *Every*, the verb should be *singular*; as, Every man and woman *was* astonished at her fortitude. Every boy and girl *was* taught to read.—See Rule XXVII.

With and And.

6. When a *singular* noun has a clause joined to it by *with*, it is often difficult to determine whether the verb should be *singular* or *plural*, especially as our most reputable authors use sometimes the one and sometimes the other: for example, some would say, My uncle, with his son, *was* in town yesterday. Others would say, My uncle, with his son, *were* in town yesterday.

If we take the *sense* for our guide, and nothing else can guide us in a case of this kind, it is evident that the verb should be *plural*; for both *uncle* and *son* are the *joint* subjects of our affirmation, and declared to be both in the *same* state.

When we perceive from the sense that the noun *before With* is *exclusively* the real subject, then the verb should be *singular*; thus, *Christ*, with his three chosen disciples, *was* transfigured on the mount. Here the verb is *singular*, because we know that none but *Christ* *was* transfigured; the disciples were not *joint* associates with him; they were mere spectators. There seems to be an ellipsis in such sentences as this, which, if supplied in the present.

would
three
Up
sense
with i
when
to reg
adject
Thus,
say, M
Anoth
the ord
day, w
Mr
should
" Pros
truly a
C, con
former
not "
humilit
humilit
totally
perity
amiable
two th
possess
lence,
this, no
prosper
when p
In th
is, not t
itself, b

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

would run thus: Christ, (when in company) with his three chosen disciples, was transfigured on the mount.

Upon the whole, it would be better, when the sense requires the verb to be in the plural, not to use *with* in these constructions, but to use *and*; and, when the sense requires the verb to be in the singular, to regard the phrase beginning with *with* as an adjective phrase, qualifying the preceding noun. Thus, in the first of the above examples, we should say, My uncle *and* his son *were* in town yesterday. Another way of overcoming the difficulty is to change the order, and to say, My uncle *was* in town yesterday, with his son.

Mr Murray maintains that the verb in such cases should always be singular, and gives as examples, "Prosperity, with humility, *renders* its possessor truly amiable." "The side A, *with* the sides B and C, *composes* the triangle." This is true. In the former sentence, the true nominative or subject is not "Prosperity" by itself, but "Prosperity with humility," that is, "Prosperity *when accompanied by* humility." The use of *and* here would give a totally different meaning. If it were said that "Prosperity and humility render their possessor truly amiable," the meaning would be that there are two things each of which separately renders its possessor truly amiable. The meaning of the sentence, however, is, not that prosperity always does this, not that humility always does this, but that prosperity renders its possessor truly amiable only when prosperity is accompanied by humility.

In the latter sentence, in like manner, the meaning is, not that "the side A" composes the triangle by itself, but that it does so when it is taken in con-

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

nection with the sides B and C. Here again, as in the former case, the true subject is not "the side A," but, "the side A with the sides B and C;" one thing does a certain work when conjoined with two other things. A change of construction would obviate all objections and difficulties. We should say, "The sides A, B, and C, compose the triangle."

Other examples are to be treated in the same way. "She *with* her sisters are well," should be "She *and* her sisters *are* well." "The general *with* his men *were* taken prisoners," should be "The general *and* his men." "The captain *with* his men catches negroes," is correct. It means, "The captain *with* the help of, or aided by, his men." In these last instances, the phrase introduced by *with* expresses instrumentality, and should therefore be connected with the verb which follows it, rather than with the noun which precedes it.

Of the Articles, with several Adjectives.

An or a and the are prefixed only to the first of several adjectives qualifying one noun; as, A meek and holy man: but the article should be repeated, before each adjective, when each adjective relates to a generic word applicable to every one of the adjectives. For example, "The black and white cows were sold yesterday; the red will be sold tomorrow."

Here cows is the *generic* word, applicable to each of the adjectives, *black*, *white*, and *red*, but for want of *the* before *white*, we are led to suppose that the *black* and *white* cows mean only *one* sort, which are speckled with spots of black and white; and if this is our meaning, the sen-

tence
the c
inser
and
white

So
and i
write
in oth
be an
stance
necess
bald a
there
cow c

The
Demon
article
only o
would
other s

The
should
Those,
viously
improp
never
be hap
those th
out a p
to noun

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

tence is right; but if we mean *two* different sorts, the one all black and the other all white, we should insert the article before *both*; and say, *The* black and *the* white cows, *i. e.* The black cows and the white cows were sold.

Some think this distinction of little importance; and it is really seldom attended to even by good writers; but in some cases it is necessary, although in others there cannot, from the nature of the thing, be any mistake. In the following sentence, for instance, the repetition of *the* before *horned* is not *necessary*, although it would be proper. "The *bald* and *horned* cows were sold last week." Here there can be no mistake, *two* sorts were sold; for a cow cannot be *bald* and *horned* too.

The same remark may be made respecting the *Demonstratives* that has been made respecting the *articles*; as, "*That* great and good man," means only *one* man: but *that* great and *that* good man would mean *two* men; the one a *great* man, the other a *good*.

They—Those.

They stands for a noun already introduced, and should never be used till the noun be mentioned. *Those*, on the contrary, points out a noun not previously introduced, but generally understood. It is improper therefore to say, *They* who tell lies are never esteemed. *They* that are truly good must be happy. We should say, *Those* who tell lies, and *those* that are truly good; because we are *pointing out* a particular class of persons, and not referring to nouns previously introduced. A noun when not

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

expressed after *this, that, these, and those*, is always understood.

Another—One—Every.

Another corresponds to *one*; but not to *some* nor to *every*. Thus, "Handed down from *every* writer of verses to *another*," should be, From *one* writer of verses to *another*. "At *some* hour or *another*," should be, At *some* hour or *other*.

One is often used in familiar phrases (like *on* in French) for *we* or any *one* of us indiscriminately; Thus, *One* is often more influenced by example than by precept. The verb and pronoun with which *one* agrees should be *singular*. Thus, If *one* take a wrong method at first, it will lead *them* astray: should be, It will lead *one* astray, or it will lead *him* astray.

That and those.

It is improper to apply *that* and *those* to things present or just mentioned. Thus, "They cannot be separated from the subject which follows; and for *that* reason," &c., should be, And for *this* reason, &c. "Those sentences which we have at present before us:" should be, *These*, or *the* sentences which we have, &c.

As Follows; as Appears.

As is often used as a Personal or Relative pronoun, and in both *numbers*, and in these cases it should be construed as a pronoun; as, "His words were as *follow*," that is, His words were *those* which follow. Here *as* is *plural*, because *words*, its antecedent, is plural. His description was as *follows*. Here *as* is *singular*, because *description*, its antecedent, is singular; that is, His description was *this* which follows.

This
Croml
and M
tences
as fol
contro
"as i
thing?
for arg
noun a
ing ou
tion w
the an
is, Th
then, t
and th
verb is
agreein
as. In
parenth
but stil
it appe

They
verb is
nomina
ments a
position
This is
mer: fo
verb?
quality
do with
must be

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

This account of *as*, though in unison with Dr. Crombie's, is at variance with that of Dr. Campbell and Mr. Murray. They explain the following sentences thus: "The arguments advanced were nearly *as follows*;" "The positions were, *as appears*, incontrovertible." That is, say they, "*as it follows*," "*as it appears*." What *it*? The *thing*. What *thing*?—*It*, or *thing*, cannot relate to *arguments*, for *arguments* is *plural* and *must* have a plural pronoun and verb. Take the ordinary method of finding out the nominative to a verb, by asking a question with the verb, and the true nominative will be the answer: Thus, What follows? and the answer is, The *arguments follow*. It must be obvious, then, that *it* cannot be substituted for *arguments*, and that *as* is equal to *those which*, and that the verb is not *impersonal* but the *third person plural*, agreeing with its nominative *which*, the last half of *as*. In the second example, *as appears*, is a mere parenthesis, and does not relate to *positions* at all; but still the *as* is a pronoun. Thus, the positions, *it appears*, were incontrovertible.

They say, however, if we use *such* before *as*, the verb is no longer *impersonal*, but agrees with its nominative in the *plural* number; as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *such as follow*." "The positions were *such as appear* incontrovertible." This is, if possible, a greater mistake than the former: for what has *such* to do with the following verb? *Such* means of *that kind*, and expresses the quality of the *noun* repeated, but it has nothing to do with the verb at all. Therefore the construction must be the same with *such* that it is with *as*, with

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

this difference in meaning, that when *such as* is used, we mean of *that kind* which follows.

When we say "His arguments are *as follow*," we mean *those* arguments which follow are *verbatim* the very *same* that he used. But when we say, "His arguments were *such as follow*," we convey the idea, that the arguments which follow are *not* the very *same* that he used; but that they are only of the same *nature* or *kind*.

Their position, however, that the verb should be plural, can be made out by a circumlocution, thus: "His arguments were nearly *such* arguments as those which follow are:" but this very solution would show the error into which they have fallen in such phrases as, *as follows*, *as appears*, for they will not admit of similar solutions. We cannot say, "His arguments are nearly as the arguments which *follows is*."*

This means, &c.

The word *means* in the singular number, and the phrases, *By this means*, *By that means*, are used by our best and most correct writers when they denote instrumentality; as, *By means of death, &c.* By *that means* he preserves his superiority.—*Addison*.

Good writers use the noun *mean* in the singular number only to denote *mediocrity*, *middle state*, &c. as, *This is a mean* between the two extremes.

This means and *that means* should be used only

* Addison and Steele have used a *plural verb* where the antecedent *to as* is plural. See Tatler, No. 62, 104.—Spec. No. 513. Dr. Campbell, in his *Philosophy of Rhetoric*, vol. ii. p. 7, has mistaken the construction of these phrases.

when
and t
He li
his h
trious,
means

Ame
as, Pe
sacrific
thanks
estate :

Into
when
They c

Whe
the wor
per is
we use
dom fou

We a
get it, a
find tha
We are
possessi
quently
been dis

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

when they refer to what is singular; *these means* and *those means*, when they respect plurals; as, He lived temperately, and by *this means* preserved his health. The scholars were attentive, industrious, and obedient to their tutors; and by *these means* acquired knowledge.

Amends.

Amends is used in the same manner as *means*, as, Peace of mind is an honourable *amends* for the sacrifices of interest. In return, he received the thanks of his employers, and the present of a large estate: *these* were ample *amends* for all his labours.

Into, in.

Into is used after a verb of motion: and *in*, when motion or rest *in* a place is signified; as, They cast him *into* a pit; I walk *in* the park.

So and such.

When we refer to the *species* or *nature* of a thing, the word *such* is properly applied; as, *Such* a temper is seldom found; but when *degree* is signified, we use the word *so*; as, *So* bad a temper is seldom found.

Disappointed of, disappointed in.

We are *disappointed of* a thing when we do not get it, and *disappointed in* it when we have it, and find that it does not answer our expectations; as, We are often *disappointed in* things, which, before possession, promised much enjoyment. I have frequently desired their company, but have hitherto been *disappointed of* that pleasure.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

Taste of, and Taste for.

A taste of a thing implies actual enjoyment of it; but a taste for it implies only a capacity for enjoyment; as, When we have had a true taste of the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish for those of vice. He had a taste for such studies, and pursued them earnestly.

The Nominative and the Verb.

When the nominative case has no personal tense of a verb, but is put before a *participle*, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is called the *case absolute*; as, *Shame* being lost, all virtue is lost; *him* destroyed; *him* descending; *him* only excepted; —*him*, in all these places, should be *he*.

Every *Verb*, except in the infinitive mood or the participle, ought to have a *nominative* case, either expressed or implied; as, *Arise*, let us go home; that is, *Arise ye*.

Every *Nominative* case should belong to some *verb*, either expressed or implied; as, "To whom thus *Adam*," i. e. *spoke*. In the following sentence, the word *virtue* is left by itself, without any verb with which it might agree. "Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, men are so constituted as ultimately to acknowledge and respect genuine merit:" it should be, However much *virtue may* be neglected, &c. The sentence may be made more elegant by altering the arrangement of the words: thus, Such is the constitution of men, *that virtue*, however much it may be neglected for a time, *will* ultimately be acknowledged and respected.—See Rule XIX.

The nominative is commonly placed before the

verb
the a
Th
these
book
W
They
blame
W
After
W
men;
which
W
name,
court
name
was b
It i
tion;
was th
are th
would
The
noun c
der; a
Adj
from th
meanin
tinct e
enough
is frequ
fies; a

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

verb; but it is sometimes put *after* it, or between the auxiliary and the verb.—See Parsing, No. *e*.

Them is sometimes improperly used instead of *these* or *those*; as, Give me *them* books, for *those* books, or *these* books.

What is sometimes improperly used for *that*; as, They will never believe but *what* I have been to blame; it should be, But *that* I have been, &c.

Which is often improperly used for *that*; thus, After *which* time; should be, After *that* time.

Which is applied to *collective* nouns composed of men; as, The court of Spain *which*; the company *which*, &c.

Which, and not *who*, should be used after the name of a person used merely as a *word*; as, The court of Queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy; it should be, *which* was but another, or, *whose name* was, &c.

It is and *it was* are often used in plural construction; as, *It is* they that are the real authors. *It was* the heretics that first began to rail, &c.—*They* are the real authors. The *heretics* first began, &c. would perhaps be more elegant.

The neuter pronoun *it*, is frequently joined to a noun or pronoun of the masculine or feminine gender; as, *It was I*; *It was the man*.

Adjectives, in many cases, should not be separated from their nouns, even by words which modify their meaning; thus, A large enough number; a distinct enough manner; should be, A number large enough; a manner distinct enough. The *adjective* is frequently placed *after* the noun which it qualifies; as, Goodness *divine*; Alexander the *Great*.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

All is sometimes emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it; as, Ambition, interest, honour, *all* these concurred.

Never generally precedes the verb; as, I *never* saw him: but when an auxiliary is used, *never* may be placed either between it and the verb, or before both; as, He was *never* seen; or, he *never* was seen.

The *present participle* is frequently introduced without any obvious reference to any *noun* or *pronoun*; as, Generally *speaking*, he behaves well. *Granting* his story to be true, &c. A pronoun is perhaps understood; as, *We* speaking; *We* granting.

Sometimes a *neuter* verb governs an objective, when the noun is of the same import with the verb; thus, to dream a *dream*; to run a *race*. Sometimes the noun after a *neuter* verb is governed by a preposition understood; as, He lay six hours in bed, *i. e.* *during* six hours.

The same verbs are sometimes used as *active*, and sometimes as *neuter*, according to the sense; thus, *Think*, in the phrase, "*Think* on me," is a *neuter* verb; but it is *active* in the phrase "*Charity thinketh* no evil."

It is improper to change the form of the second or third person singular of the auxiliaries in the *compound tenses* of the subjunctive mood; thus, If thou *have* done thy duty. Unless he *have* brought money. If thou *had* studied more diligently. Unless thou *shall* go to-day. If thou *will* grant my request, &c.; should be, If thou *hast* done thy duty. Unless he *has* brought. If thou *hadst* studied. Unless thou *shalt* go, &c.

It
in the
Thus,
submi
If tho
The
If t
it. I
Thoug
be lov
might

1. T
- piece o
2. T
- to a qu
3. P
- ships, &
4. T
- written
5. T
6. T
- High, &
7. A
- places;
8. T
- a colon
- "Know
9. Co
- gentle S

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

It is improper to vary the second person singular in the *past* subjunctive (except the verb *to be*). Thus, If thou *came* not in time, &c.; If thou *did* not submit, &c.; *should be*, If thou *camest* not in time; If thou *didst* not submit.

The following phrases are strictly grammatical.

If thou *knewest* the gift. If thou *didst* receive it. If thou *hadst* known. If thou *wilt* save her. *Though* he *hath* escaped the sea. *That* thou *mayst* be loved. We also properly say, *If* thou *mayst*, *mightst*, *couldst*, *wouldst*, or *shouldst* love.

Of Capitals.

1. The first word of every book, or any other piece of writing, must begin with a capital letter.
2. The first word after a period, and the answer to a question, must begin, &c.
3. Proper names, that is, names of persons, places, ships, &c.
4. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals.
5. The first word of every line in poetry.
6. The appellations of the Deity; as, God, Most High, &c.
7. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places; as, Grecian, Roman, English, &c.
8. The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon; as, Always remember this ancient maxim: "*Know thyself.*"
9. Common nouns when personified; as, Come, gentle *Spring*.

FORMAL MODES OF ADDRESSING PERSONS OF TITLE, ETC.

THE ROYAL FAMILY.

Her Majesty the Queen is addressed *The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty, Madam, or May it please your Majesty.* The children of the Sovereign, and the children of the sons of the Sovereign, are addressed *His or Her Royal Highness The Prince or Princess, or The Duke or Duchess of —, Sir or Madam,* and are personally referred to as *Your Royal Highness.*

PEERS.

DUKES are addressed *His Grace the Duke of —.* Letters begin *My Lord Duke,* and he is personally referred to as *Your Grace.* **DUCHESES** are addressed *Her Grace The Duchess of —.* Letters begin *Madam,* and she is personally referred to as *Your Grace.*

MARQUESSSES: *The Most Honourable the Marquess of —, My Lord Marquess, Your Lordship.* **MARCHIONESSES:** *The Most Honourable The Marchioness of —, Madam, Your Ladyship.*

EARLS, VISCOUNTS, BARONS: *The Right Honourable the Earl of —, The Right Honourable Lord Viscount —, The Right Honourable Lord — (or less formally without Right Honourable), My Lord, Your Lordship.* **COUNTESSES, VISCOUNTESSES, and BARONESSES:** *The Right Honourable The Countess —, The Right Honourable The Viscountess —, The Right Honourable Lady —, (or less formally without Right Honourable), Madam, Your Ladyship.*

The title of *Right Honourable* is given to *all the children of Dukes and Marquesses, to the eldest sons and all the daughters of Earls.* The younger sons and the daughters of Dukes and Marquesses and the daughters of Earls have the title of *Lord or Lady,* thus: *The Right Honourable Lord John —, Lady Jane —.*

The *younger sons of Earls and all the children of Viscounts and Barons* are styled *Honourable,* and are thus addressed: *The Honourable William —, Sir; The Honourable Mary —, or if married, The Honourable Mrs —, Madam.*

BARONETS AND KNIGHTS.

Baronets are addressed thus: *Sir A — B —, Bart.,* and letters begin with *Sir.* Knights are addressed, *Sir C — D —, Sir* (the word *Knight* is usually omitted except in formal documents). Baronets and Knights are addressed familiarly, *Dear Sir A —, Dear Sir C —.* Wives of Baronets and Knights, *Lady —, Madam, Your Ladyship.*

Titled p
tion, s
The title
Her M
of the L
the L
Admir
Honour
Custom
The title
Govern
Lord L
Bart.,
Ministe
office is
Grace 2
address
A —,
The Hous
the Lov
Great E
Lords, A
The Hous
the Com
Ireland
your Ho
ARCHBISH
—, Le
referred
BISHOPS:
*My Lord
ship.*
Bishops of
United S
Reverend
Archbish
husbands
DEANS: Th
Sir, or M
ARCHDEAC
Sir, or M
The general
or, when b

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Titled persons in the Army or Navy use their official designation, such as *General*, before their title, thus: *General Lord* —, *Admiral the Honourable* —, *Colonel Sir* —.

The title of *Right Honourable* is given to all the members of Her Majesty's Most Honourable Privy Council, the Speaker of the House of Commons, the Lord Advocate of Scotland, the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury, and of the Admiralty. Other Government Boards are addressed, *The Honourable* The Commissioners of Inland Revenue, of Customs, etc.

The title *Excellency* is given to Ambassadors, Plenipotentiaries, Governors-General, and Governors of Colonies, and to the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, thus: *His Excellency Sir* —, *Barl.*, Her Britannic Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to the Court of —, *Your Excellency, May it please your Excellency*. If the holder of the office is a Duke he is not addressed *His Excellency*, but *His Grace The Lord Lieutenant*. The wives of Ambassadors are addressed in the same way, *Her Excellency The Countess A* —, *Madam*.

The House of Peers is addressed thus: To the Right Honourable the Lords Spiritual and Temporal of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled, — *My Lords, May it please your Lordships*.

The House of Commons is addressed thus: To the Honourable the Commons of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled — *Gentlemen, May it please your Honourable House*.

THE CHURCH.

ARCHBISHOPS are addressed *His Grace The Lord Archbishop of* —. Letters begin *My Lord Archbishop*, and he is personally referred to as *Your Grace*.

BISHOPS: The Right Reverend The Lord Bishop of —, *My Lord Bishop*, and is personally referred to as *Your Lordship*.

Bishops of the Episcopalian Church in Scotland and in the United States of America are addressed by name. The Right Reverend Bishop —, *Right Reverend Sir*. The wives of Archbishops and Bishops have no title in right of their husbands' official rank.

DEANS: The Very Reverend the Dean of —, *Very Reverend Sir*, or *Mr Dean*.

ARCHDEACONS: The Venerable the Archdeacon —, *Reverend Sir*, or *Mr Archdeacon*.

The general address to Clergymen is, *Reverend A* — *B* —, or, when his Christian name is unknown, *Reverend Mr B* —,

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Sir, or *Reverend Sir*. Should he have received the degree of Doctor of Divinity, address thus: *Reverend Doctor B—*, or *Rev. A— B—, D.D., Reverend Sir*. If a Clergyman possess the title of *Right Honourable* or *Honourable*, it is prefixed to his clerical title thus: *The Right Honourable and Reverend—* and if possessing title, *The Honourable and Reverend Lord C— D—, Bishop of E—*. Baronets are addressed *The Reverend Sir F— G—, Bart.*

His Majesty's Commissioner to the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland is styled *His Grace the Lord High Commissioner*. The General Assembly itself is styled *The Venerable*, and its Moderator *The Very Reverend*. The Provincial Synods of the Church are styled *Very Reverend*; and Presbyteries, *Reverend*.

When Principals of Colleges in Scotland are clergymen they are styled *Very Reverend*. If a Principal or Professor in a University be a layman, he must be addressed according to his civil or academic rank, thus: *Sir A— B—*, or *Dr C— D—, Principal of the University of E—*, or *Professor of — in the University of E—, Sir*. In other cases he is simply styled *Esquire*, with the addition of any other degree, thus, *F— G—, Esq., M.A., Professor, etc., Sir*.

JUDGES.

The Lord Chancellor and The Lord Chief Justice are addressed as *The Right Honourable, My Lord*. The Master of the Rolls, *His Honour, Sir*. The Judges, The Honourable Mr Justice —, *Sir*. The Judges of the Court of Session in Scotland are addressed The Honourable Lord —, *My Lord*. Should these latter be Privy Councillors, they are addressed as *Right Honourable*.

MUNICIPAL.

The title *Right Worshipful* is used in officially addressing the Sheriffs, Aldermen, and Recorder of London, and Mayors of all Corporations; and *Worshipful* is given to the Aldermen and Recorders of other Corporations, and to Justices of the Peace in England—*Sir, Your Worship*. The Lord Mayors of London, York, and Dublin, and the Lord Provost of Edinburgh have the title of *Right Honourable*, and are addressed *My Lord*.

Mr and *Esquire* are never both attached to the same name.

PUNCTUATION
position
its prop

A sin
full sto
seat in t

The
are sep
temn st
men use
great pr

The
from th
My Son
most ob
to you, t

Two v
nouns,
do not
coupled
are good
expands
and flat
forcibly
suppress
He was

Of PUNCTUATION.

PUNCTUATION is the art of pointing written composition in such a manner as may naturally lead to its proper meaning, construction, and delivery.

Of the Comma. [,]

RULE I.

A simple sentence in general requires only a full stop at the end; as, True politeness has its seat in the heart.

RULE II.

The simple members of a compound sentence are separated by a comma; as, Crafty men contemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them. He studies diligently, and makes great progress.

RULE III.

The persons in a direct address are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, *My Son*, give me thine heart. *Colonel*, Your most obedient. I thank you, *sir*. I am obliged to you, *my friends*, for your kindness.

RULE IV.

Two words of the same part of speech, whether nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, do not admit of a comma between them, when coupled with a conjunction; as, James *and* John are good. She is wise *and* virtuous. Religion expands *and* elevates the mind. By being admired *and* flattered, she became vain. Cicero spoke forcibly *and* fluently. When the conjunction is suppressed, a comma is inserted in its place; as, He was a plain, honest man.

Of the Comma.

RULE V.

Three or more nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, are separated by commas; as, The sun, the moon, and the stars, are the glory of nature.

When words follow in *pairs*, there is a comma between each *pair*; as, Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and constant.

RULE VI.

All phrases or explanatory sentences, whether in the beginning, middle, or end of a simple sentence, are separated from it by commas; as, *To confess the truth*, I was in fault. *His father dying*, he succeeded to the estate. The king, *approving the plan*, put it in execution. Paul, *the apostle of the Gentiles*, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge. Victoria, *queen of Great Britain*. I have seen the emperor, *as he was called*. *In short*, he was a great man.—See p. 162.

RULE VII.

The verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, or an infinitive with adjuncts, is generally preceded by a comma; as, *To be diligently employed in the performance of real duty*, is honourable. One of the noblest of the Christian virtues, is to love our enemies.*

RULE VIII.

A comma is used between the two parts of a sentence that has its natural order inverted; as, *Him that is upright in his dealings*, honour ye.

* Some insert a comma both *before* and *after* the verb *to be* when it is near the middle of a long sentence, because the *pronunciation* requires it; but that is a bad reason; for pauses and points are often at variance.

Any
tion of
There
no gain

Rela
in some
Whe
and it
not in
female
It is la
The fir
all orn
barbaro
received

A c
underst
though,
has acc
acquire
appetite
The sur
A c
two me
compar
mind, th
As thy

* That i
tive is pro

Of the Comma.

RULE IX.

Any remarkable expression resembling a quotation or a command, is preceded by a comma; as, There is much truth in the proverb, *Without pains no gains*. I beseech you, *be honest*.

RULE X.

Relative pronouns admit of a comma before them in some cases, and in some not.

When several words come between the relative and its antecedent,* a comma is inserted; but not in other cases; as, There is no *charm* in the female sex *which* can supply the place of virtue. It is *labour* only *which* gives the relish to pleasure. The first *beauty* of style is propriety, *without which* all ornament is puerile and superfluous. It is barbarous to injure *those from whom* we have received a kindness.

RULE XI.

A comma is often inserted where a verb is *understood*, and particularly before *not*, *but*, and *though*, in such cases as the following: John has acquired much knowledge; his brother, (has acquired) little. A man ought to obey reason, *not* appetite. He was a great poet, *but* a bad man. The sun is up, *though* he is not visible.

A comma is sometimes inserted between the two members of a *long* sentence connected by comparatives; as, Better is a little with a contented mind, than great wealth and much trouble with it. As thy diligent, so shall thy success be.

* That is, when the relative clause is merely *explanatory*, the relative is preceded by a comma.

Of the Comma.

RULE XII.

It has been stated in Rule VI. that explanatory words and phrases, such as *perfectly, indeed, doubtless, formerly, in fine, &c.*, should be separated from the context by a comma.

Many adverbs, however, and even phrases, when they are considered of little importance, should *not* be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, Be ye *therefore* upright. *Peradventure* I shall be at home. All things *indeed* decay. *Doubtless* thou art our friend. They were *formerly* very studious. He was at *last* convinced of his error. Be not on *that account* displeased with your son. *Nevertheless* I am no judge of such matters. Anger is *in a manner* like madness. *At length* some pity warmed the master's breast.

These twelve rules respecting the position of the *comma*, include everything, it is presumed, to be found in the more numerous rules of larger volumes. But it is impossible to make them perfect. For, "In many instances, the employment, or omission of a comma, depends upon the length or the shortness of a clause: the presence or absence of adjuncts; the importance or non-importance of the sentiment. Indeed, with respect to punctuation, the practice of the best writers is extremely arbitrary; many omitting some of the usual commas when no error in sense or in construction is likely to arise from the omission. Good sense and attentive observation are more likely to regulate this subject than any mechanical directions."

The best general rule is, to point in such a manner as to make the sense evident.

No exercises have been subjoined to the Rules on punctuation; because none can be given equal to those the pupil can prescribe for himself. After he has learned the rules let him transcribe a piece from any good author, omitting the points and capitals; and then having pointed his manuscript, and restored the capitals, let him compare his own punctuation with the author's.

The
bers of
than th
Some
depende
syntax
complet
one is
be inde

Hasty
attended
very m
choice b

To
Bu
An

Philos
her oper
in reser
gressive
tinue to
least ide

The s
arate sin
occur: t
the prid
dignity i
insupport

In every
complete;
semicolon;
short and f

Of the Semicolon. [;]

The semicolon is used to separate two members of a sentence less dependent on each other than those separated by the comma.

Sometimes the two members have a mutual dependence on one another, both in sense and syntax; sometimes the preceding member makes complete sense of itself, and only the following one is dependent; and sometimes both seem to be independent.

EXAMPLES.

Hasty and inconsiderate connections are generally attended with great disadvantages; and much of every man's good or ill fortune depends upon the choice he makes of his friends.

Trust not to fortune, nor to titled name,
To lead thee to the avenues of fame;
But let some nobler aim thy mind engage,
And sow in youth what thou wouldst reap in age.

Philosophy asserts, that Nature is unlimited in her operations; that she has inexhaustible stores in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea.

The semicolon is sometimes employed to separate simple members in which even no commas occur: thus, The pride of wealth is contemptible; the pride of learning is pitiable; the pride of dignity is ridiculous; and the pride of bigotry is insupportable.

In every one of these members the construction and sense are complete; and a period might have been used instead of the semicolon; which is preferred merely because the sentences are short and form a climax.

Of the Colon. [:]

The colon is used when the preceding part of the sentence is complete in sense and construction; and the following part is some remark naturally arising from it, and depending on it in sense, though not in construction; as, Study to acquire the habit of thinking: no study is more important.

A colon is generally used before an example or a quotation; as, The Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity in these words: *God is love.* He was often heard to say: *I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it.*

A colon is generally used where the sense is complete in the first clause, and the next begins with a conjunction *understood*; as, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness: there is no such thing in the world. Had the conjunction *for* been expressed, a semicolon would have been used; thus, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness; *for* there is no such thing in the world.

The *colon* is generally used when the conjunction is *understood*; and the *semicolon* when the conjunction is *expressed*.

Note.—This observation has not always been attended to in pointing the Psalms and some parts of the Liturgy. In them, a colon is often used merely to divide the verse, it would seem, into two parts, to suit a particular species of church music called *chanting*; as, "My tongue is the pen: of a ready writer." In reading, a caesural pause, in such a place as this, is enough. In the Psalms, and often in the Proverbs, the colon must be read like a semicolon, or even like a comma, according to the sense.

When
and se
loss of v
but tha
A p
tences
for, the
contribu
destruct
All a

Of

Interrogati
Admirati
the r
Parentheses
another
Apostrophe
Caret (^) is
Hyphen (-)
is at
words
Section (§)
Paragraph
Crotchets or
is to
rect a
Quotation ("
words
Index (INDEX)
Brace { is u
the
Ellipsis (—
Acute accent
Breve (˘) m
Diaeresis (¨
Asterisk (*)
letters
bottom
(**) Two o
some l
Dash (—) i
expect
commo

Of the Period. [.]

When a sentence is complete in construction and sense, it is marked with a period; as, The loss of wealth may be regained; of health, recovered; but that of time can never be recalled.

A period is sometimes admitted between sentences connected by such words as *but*, *and*, *for*, *therefore*, *hence*, &c. Example: Good-will contributes to health of body. But envy tends to its destruction.

All abbreviations end with a *period*; as, A.D.

Of other Characters used in Composition.

Interrogation (?) is used when a question is asked.

Admiration or Exclamation (!) is used to express any sudden emotion of the mind.

Parentheses () are used to enclose some necessary remark in the body of another sentence; *commas* are now used instead of Parentheses.

Apostrophe (') is used in place of a letter left out; as, *earn'd* for *earned*.

Caret (^) is used to show that some word is either omitted or interlined.

Hyphen (-) is used at the end of a line, to show that the rest of the word is at the beginning of the next line. It also connects compound words; as, *Tea-pot*.

Section (§) is used to divide a discourse or chapter into portions.

Paragraph (¶) is used to denote the beginning of a new subject.

Crotchets or Brackets [] are used to enclose a word or sentence which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itself, or to correct a mistake, or supply some deficiency.

Quotation (" ") is used to show that a passage is quoted in the author's words.

Index (☞) is used to point out anything remarkable.

Brace { is used to connect words which have one common term, or three lines in poetry having the same rhyme, called a triplet.

Elipsis (—) is used when some letters are omitted; as, *K—g* for *King*.

Acute accent (') is used to denote a *short* syllable; the *grave* (`) a *long*.

Breve (˘) marks a *short* vowel or syllable, and the dash (-) a *long*.

Diaeresis (¨) is used to divide a diphthong into two syllables; as, *aërial*.

Asterisk (*) *Obelisk* (†) *Double dagger* (‡) and *Parallels* (||) with small letters and figures, refer to some note on the margin, or at the bottom of the page.

(**) Two or three asterisks denote the omission of some letters in some bold or indelicate expression.

Dash (—) is used to denote abruptness—a significant pause—an unexpected turn in the sentiment—or that the *first* clause is common to all the rest, as in *this definition* of a dash.

ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>Latin.</i>		<i>English.</i>
Ante Christum *	A.C. or B.C.	Before Christ
Artium Baccalaureus	A.B. or B.A.	Bachelor of Arts
Anno Domini	A.D.	In the year of our Lord
Artium Magister	A.M. or M.A.	Master of Arts
Anno Mundi	A.M.	In the year of the world
Ante Meridiem	A.M.	In the forenoon.
Baccalaureus Divinitatis	B.D.	Bachelor of Divinity
Baccalaureus Medicinæ	B.M.	Bachelor of Medicine
Chirurgiæ Magister	C.M.	Master in Surgery
Divinitatis Doctor	D.D.	Doctor of Divinity
Et Cætera	&c.	And the rest; and so forth
Exempli gratia	e.g.	For example
Id est	i.e.	That is
Instante	inst.	Of the present (month)
Iesus Hominum Salvator	I.H.S.	Jesus the Saviour of Men
Legum Doctor	L.L.D.	Doctor of Laws
Medicinæ Doctor	M.D.	Doctor of Medicine
Nota Bene	N.B.	Note well; Take notice
Philosophiæ Doctor	Ph.D.	Doctor of Philosophy
Post Meridiem	P.M.	In the afternoon
Post Scriptum	P.S.	Postscript; something written after
Proximo	prox.	In the next (month)
Regiæ Societatis Socius	F.R.S.	Fellow of the Royal Society
Requiescat in pace	R.I.P.	May he rest in peace
Scientiæ Doctor	Sc.D.	Doctor of Science
Societatis Antiquariorum Socius	F.S.A.	Fellow of the Society of Antiquaries
Ultimo	Ult.	Last (month)
Victoria Regina	V.R.	Victoria the Queen

Acct. Account	C.A.	Chartered Accountant
Baro. Baronet	C.B.	Companion of the Bath
Bp. Bishop	D.C.L.	Doctor of Civil or Canon Law
Capt. Captain	G.C.B.	Knight Grand Cross of the Bath
Col. Colonel	G.C.M.G.	Knight Grand Cross of St Michael and St George
Cr. Creditor		
Dr. Debtor, Doctor	G.C.S.I.	Grand Commander of the Star of India
Do. or Ditto. The same		
J.P. Justice of the Peace	H.R.H.	His or Her Royal Highness
Knt. Knight	K.C.B.	Knight Commander of the Bath
K.G. Knight of the Garter	K.C.M.G.	Knight Commander of St Michael and St George
K.P. Knight of St. Patrick		
K.T. Knight of the Thistle	K.C.S.I.	Knight Commander of the Star of India
O.S. Old Style		
P.C. Privy Councillor	M.P.	Member of Parliament
R.N. Royal Navy.	M.B.	Manuscript. — MSS. Manuscripts
U.S. United States	S.S.C.	Solicitor before the Supreme Courts
Viz.† Namely	W.S.	Writer to Her Majesty's Signet

* The *Latin* of these abbreviations is inserted, not to be got by heart, but to show the *etymology* of the *English*; or explain, for instance, how P.M. comes to mean afternoon, &c.—† Contraction of *videlicet*.

PROSE
of wo
tity, E
of Ver

Accen
word th
The
in pron
sume.

Emph
a senten
meaning
knowled

A Par
voice, d
full-man
man.

Tone
shed t
shout

Prose
set numb
Verse
long and
Verse
When th

* Emph
after the
disagree
it still mo
† Accen
and pause
ings of the

PROSODY.

PROSODY treats of the true sound or pronunciation of words and sentences; comprising *Accent*, *Quantity*, *Emphasis*, *Pause*, and *Tone*, and the measure of Verses.

Accent is the laying of a greater force on one syllable of a word than on another; as, *Surmount*.*

The *Quantity* of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. Quantity is either short or long; as, *Con-sume*.

Emphasis is a remarkable stress laid upon certain words in a sentence, to distinguish them from the rest, by making the meaning more apparent; as, Apply yourself more to *acquire* knowledge than to *show* it.*

A *Pause* is either a total cessation or a short suspension of the voice, during a perceptible space of time; as, Reading—makes a full-man; conference—a ready-man; and writing—an exact-man.

Tone is a particular modulation or inflection of the voice, suited to the sense; as, How bright these glorious spirits shine! Have pity upon me, have pity upon me, O my friends.

Versification.

Prose is language not restrained to harmonic sounds, or to a set number of syllables.

Verse or *Poetry* is language restrained to a certain number of long and short syllables in every line.

Verse is of two kinds; namely, *Rhyme* and *Blank* verse. When the last syllable of every two lines has the same sound,

* *Emphasis* should be made rather by *suspending* the voice a little after the emphatic word, than by striking it very forcibly, which is disagreeable to a good ear. A very short pause before it would render it still more emphatical; as, Reading—makes a—full—man.

† *Accent* and *quantity* respect the pronunciation of words; *emphasis* and *pause* the meaning of the sentence; while *tone* refers to the feelings of the speaker.

it is called *rhyme*; but when this is not the case, it is called *blank verse*.

*Feet** are the parts into which a verse is divided, to see whether it has its just number of syllables or not.

Scanning is the measuring or dividing of a verse † into the several feet of which it is composed.

All feet consist either of *two* or of *three* syllables, and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of three, as follow:

Dissyllables.

A *trōchēe*; as, lōvelŷ. †
An *iambus*; bēcāme.
A *spondee*; vāin mān.
A *pyrrhic*; ōn ǣ (bank).

Trisyllables.

A *dactyle*; as, prōbābly.
An *amphibrach*; dōmēstic.
An *anapaest*; mīslm̄p̄rovē.
A *tribrach*; (com)fōrtāhly.

The feet in most common use are, Iambic, Trochæic, and Anapaestic.

Iambic Measure.

Iambic measure is adapted to serious subjects, and comprises verses of several kinds; such as,

1. *Of four syllables, or two feet; as,*

With rāv-ish'd ēars
Thē Mōn-ārch hēars.

It sometimes has an additional short syllable, making what is called a double ending; as,

Upōn-ǣ mōun-tāin,
Bēsīde-ǣ fōur-tāin.

* So called from the resemblance which the movement of the tongue in reading verse, bears to the motion of the feet in walking.

† A single line is called a verse. In *rhyme*, two lines are called a *couplet*; and three ending with the same sound, a *triplet*.

‡ The marks over the vowels show that a *Trochee* consists of a *long* and a *short* syllable, and the *Iambic* of a *short* and a *long*, &c.

§ In scanning verses, every *accented* syllable is called a *long* syllable; even although the sound of the vowel in pronunciation be *short*. Thus the first syllable in *rāv-ish'd* is in scanning called a *long* syllable, although the vowel *a* is *short*. By *long* then is meant an *accented* syllable; and by *short*, an *unaccented* syllable.

2. *Of the*

3. *Of eig*

4. *Of te*
tragic v

Thē
Grō

Sometimes
syllables
verse;

Fōr t

Fōr t

5. *Of ver*
the meas

Verses c
containing

This me

1. *Some o*
trochees;

Tūn
Sīn

2. *Of three iambs, or six syllables; as,*

Alöft - In äw-fül stäte,
Thē göd-like hē-rō sät,
Öür heärts - no löng-är län—guish. An additional
syllable.

3. *Of eight syllables, or four iambic feet; as,*

And mäy - ät läst - mý wēa-rý age,
Find öüt - thē péace-fül hēr-mítäge.

4. *Of ten syllables, or five feet; called pentameter, heroic, or tragic verses; as,*

Thē stärs - shäll fáde - äwäy, - thē sün - hímself
Gröw dím - wíth äge, - änd nä-türe sínk - In yēars.

Sometimes the last line of a couplet is stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, and then it is called an Alexandrine verse; as,

För thēē - thē länd - In frä-gränt flöw'rs - Is drēst;
För thēē - thē ö-ceän smíles, - änd smööthís - hēr wä-vý
breäst.

5. *Of verses containing alternately four and three feet: this is the measure commonly used in psalms and hymns; as,*

Lät säints - hēlöw, - wíth swēät - äcoörd,
Uníte - wíth thöse - ähöve,
In sö - lömn läys, tö präise - thēir kíng,
And sítg - hís dý-íng löve.

Verses of this kind were anciently written in two lines, each containing fourteen syllables.

Trochaic Measure.

This measure is quick and lively, and comprises verses,

1. *Some of one trochee and a long syllable, and some of two trochees; as,*

Tümült - öease,
Sink tö - péace.

On thē - möüntáin,
By ä - föüntáin.

2. *Of two feet, or two trochees, with an additional long syllable; as,*

In thē - dāys of - - old;
Stōriēs - plāinly - - tōld.

3. *Of three trochees, or three and an additional long syllable; as.*

Whēn ōur - hēarts āre - mōurnīng,
Lōvelly - lāstīng - pēace of - - mīnd,
Swēet dē - līght of - hūmān - - kīnd.

4. *Of four trochees, or eight syllables; as,*

Nōw thē - drēadfūl - thūndēr's - rōarīng

5. *Of six trochees, or twelve syllables; as,*

On ā - mōūntāin, - strētch'd bē - nēath ā - hōarē - willōw,
Lāy ā - shēphērd - swāin, ānd - vīew'd thē - rōarīng-bīllōw.

Those trochaic measures that are very uncommon have been omitted.

Anapaestic Measure.

1. *Of two anapaests, or two and an unaccented syllable; as*

Būt hīs cōur-āge 'gān fāil,
Fōr nō ārts - cōuld āvāil.

Or, Then his cour-age 'gan fail - - hīm,
For no arts - could avail - - hīm.

2. *Of three anapaests, or nine syllables; as,*

O yē wōōds - sprēad yōur brānch-ēs āpāce,
Tō yōur dēep-ēst rēcēss-ēs I flē;
I wōuld hīde - wīth thē bēasts - of thē chāse,
I wōuld vān-īsh frōm ēv-ērē ēyē.

Sometimes a syllable is retrenched from the first foot; as,

Yē shēp-hērds sō cheēr-fūl ānd gāy,
Whōse flocks - nēvēr cāre-lēssly rōam.

3. *Of fo*
"Tis
Yōu

Sometim
On th

The p
in their
variation
Seconda
Spon. A

A
Time
Whē
Shē
Innū
Thāt

A Figu
word o
ferent f

Pe
Si
M
Al
H
Ire
M

* Iambu
because p
them. Th
use is to d

3. *Of four anapaests, or twelve syllables; as,*

"Tis thē voice - of thē slūg-gārd; I hēar - hīm oōplāin.
Yōu hāve wāk'd - mē toō soon, - I mūst slūm-bēr āgāin.

Sometimes an additional short syllable is found at the end; as,

On the wārm - chēek of yōuth, - smīles ānd rōs-ēs āre blēnd-ing.

The preceding are the different kinds of the Principal feet, in their more simple forms; but they are susceptible of numerous variations, by mixing them with one another, and with the Secondary feet. The following lines may serve as an example -*
Spon. Amph. &c. *apply only to the first line.*

Spon. Amph. Dact. Iam.

Time shākes - thē stāblē - tȳrānnȳ - of thrōnes, &c.

Whēre is - tō-mōrrōw? - In ānōth-ēr wōrld.

Shē āll - night lōng - hēr ām-ōrouš dēs-cānt sūng.

Innū-mērāblē - bēfōre - th' Almīgh-tȳ's thrōne.

Thāt ōn - wēak wings - frōm fār - pūrsūes - yōur flight.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

A Figure of Speech is a mode of speaking, in which a word or sentence is to be understood in a sense different from its most common and literal meaning.

The principal Figures of Speech are,

Personification,
Similē,
Metaphor,
Allegory,
Hȳ-pēr'bo-lē,
Irony,
Metonymy,

Sȳ-nēc'do-chē,
Antithesis,
Climax,
Exclamation,
Interrogation,
Paralepsis,
Apostrophē.

* *Iambus, trochee, and anapest, may be denominated principal feet, because pieces of poetry may be wholly or chiefly formed of any of them. The others may be termed secondary feet, because their chief use is to diversify the numbers, and to improve the verse.*

Prosopopœia or *Personification* is that figure of speech by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; as, *The conscious Water saw its Lord and blushed.*

A *Similē* expresses the resemblance that one object bears to another; as, *The sovereign like a pillar supports the state.*

A *Metaphor* is a simile without the sign (*like* or *as*; &c.) of comparison; as, *The sovereign is the pillar of the state.*

An *Allegory* is a continuation of several metaphors, so connected in sense as to form a kind of parable or fable; thus, the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine; *Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt, &c.* Ps. lxxx. 8 to 17.

An *Hyp̄-er̄-bo-lē* is a figure that represents things as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are; as, thus we say of Saul and Jonathan, *They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.*

Irony is a figure by which we mean quite the contrary of what we say; as when we say, in a particular tone of voice, to a dishonest man, *Yes, you are a very honest man.*

A *Metonymy* is a figure by which we put the cause for the effect, or the effect for the cause; as, when we say, *He reads Milton*; we mean *Milton's Works.* *Grey hairs* should be respected, *i. e.* *old age.*

Synēdochē is the putting of a part for the whole or the whole for a part, a definite number for an indefinite, &c., as, *The waves* for the *sea*, the *head* for the *person*, and *ten thousand* for any great number. This figure is nearly allied to *metonymy.*

Anti-
ferent
them s
go dow
while o
good.

* *Clin-*
stances
place i
good, t
in obed

Exch-
some s
tender
dying c

Inter-
the emc
by prop
submiss
teach hi
truly pi

Para-
speaker
clarify
once a
process
not to
that he
constitu

Apost-
address
ligion ha
her plac

Antithesis or *Contrast* is a figure by which different or contrary objects are contrasted, to make them show one another to advantage: thus, *Some go down to the grave with the workers of iniquity; while others rise to heaven with the virtuous and the good.*

**Climax* is the heightening of all the circumstances of an object or action, which we wish to place in a strong light: as, *To profess religion is good, to feel the sentiment is better, but to practise it in obedience to the divine command is the best of all.*

Exclamation is a figure that is used to express some strong emotion of the mind; as, *Oh the tenderness of a virtuous mother's heart towards her dying child!—its father far away!*

Interrogation is a figure by which we express the emotion of our mind, and enliven our discourse by proposing questions: thus, *If you teach your son submission, will he not yield you obedience? If you teach him religion, will he not be pious? and if he be truly pious, will he not be happy?*

Paralepsis or *omission* is a figure by which the speaker pretends to conceal what he is really declaring and strongly enforcing: as, *Horatius was once a very promising young gentleman; but, in process of time, he became so addicted to gaming, not to mention his drunkenness and debauchery, that he soon exhausted his estate, and ruined his constitution.*

Apostrophè is a turning off from the subject to address some other person or thing: as, *True Religion has fled the land, and Thou, Hypocrisy, usurpest her place.*

* Climax, Amplification, Enumeration, or Gradation.

EXERCISES.

Point out the Figures of Speech.

As for man, his days are as grass ; as a flower of the field, so he flourisheth. The world is vain and inconstant ; life is fleeting and transient : O sons of men, when will ye learn to think of it as ye ought ? A flood of ignorance and misery and sin now breaks and roars above the top of the highest tentments. The jewels in her crown shone with the brilliancy of the sun. No useless coffin enclosed his breast. The mountains skipped like rams, and the little hills like lambs. No doubt but ye are the people, and wisdom will die with you ! What a piece of work is man ! how noble in reason ! how infinite in faculties ! in form and motion how express and admirable ; in action how like an angel ; in apprehension how like a god ! Can storied urn or animated bust back to its mansion call the fleeting breath ? The billows rocked themselves to sleep to the music of gentle zephyrs. How unspeakably sad I felt as I visited the scenes of my boyhood and found myself a stranger in a strange land ! The sun hid himself behind heavy clouds, and smiled upon us no more that day. I say nothing of cowardice or of neglect of duty ; it is enough that I consider you unfit for the post. Quick as lightning, he darted upon his adversary with his dagger, and buried it in his heart. If you do not set your son a good example, how can you expect him to lead a virtuous life ? He has twice abandoned his party, but never his

princi
in a fe
earth
sons i
for th
five g
played
now, t
my a
The d
observ
to do
scholar
than f
overpo
by his
crown
Charit
which
proper
withou
obedien
follows
country
Shakes
night.

He inv
and tw
the lan
reckles
crimes-

principles. In a few years at most, it may be in a few days, the sun shall see us no more and earth will claim its kindred dust. One of his sons is studying for the church, and another for the bar. Here my fathers have lived for five generations; here they lie buried; here I played as a child and laboured as a man; but, now, farewell happy fields; farewell home of my ancestors: I shall never see you more! The dew of benevolence falls silently but unobserved, seeking not to attract attention, but to do good. He must have been a diligent scholar, for he did not require correction oftener than five times a day! His eloquence was so overpowering that the very walls were moved by his arguments. Where shall we find a crown rich enough for so great a monarch? Charity, like the sun, brightens every object on which it shines. There is no enjoyment of property without government; no government without a magistrate; no magistrate without obedience; and no obedience where every one follows his own sweet will. God made the country, and man made the town. He reads Shakespeare in the morning, and Milton at night.

O what a tangled web we weave
When first we practise to deceive!

He invaded France with sixty thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse. War stalked over the land, and deluged its fields with blood. His reckless extravagance—to say nothing of his crimes—made him an outcast and a beggar.

As the following words and phrases, from the French and Latin, frequently occur in English authors, an explanation of them has been inserted here, for the convenience of those who are unacquainted with these languages. Let none, however, imagine, that by doing this I intend to encourage the use of them in English composition. On the contrary, I disapprove of it, and aver, that to express an idea in a foreign language, which can be expressed with equal perspicuity in our own, is not only pedantic, but highly improper. Such words and phrases, by being frequently used, may, notwithstanding the uncouthness of their sound and appearance, gradually incorporate with our language, and ultimately diminish its original excellence, and impair its native beauty.

- A la bonne heure, a la bon oor', *luckily; in good time.*
 A la mode, a la mod', *according to the fashion.*
 A propos, ap-prô-pô', *to the purpose; opportunely.*
 Affaire de cœur, af-fâr' de koor', *a love affair; an amour.*
 A la fin, *to the end.*
 Aide-de-camp, *âd-de-kang', *an assistant to a general.*
 Au fond, o fong', *to the bottom, or main point.*
 Auto da fé, â-tô da fâ (*Portuguese*), *burning of heretics.*
 Bagatelle, bag-a-tel', *a trifle.*
 Beau monde, bô mongd', *the gay world, people of fashion.*
 Beaux esprits, bôz es-pree, *men of wit.*
 Billet-doux, bil-le-dû', *a love-letter.*
 Bivouac, be-voo-ak', *to watch, to continue all night under arms without shelter.*
 Bon gré, mal gré, bong grâ, &c., *with a good or ill grace; whether the party will or not.*
 Bon jour, bong zhûr, *good-day; good-morning.*
 Bon-mot, bong mô, *a piece of wit, a jest.*
 Bon ton, bong tong, *high fashion.*
 Boudoir, bû-dwâr', *a small private apartment.*
 Carte blanche, kart blangsh', *a blank: unconditional terms.*
 Château, sha-tô', *a country seat.*

*Short vowels are left unmarked;—â is equal to a in rule;—ê to a in art; oo, as used here, has no correspondent sound in English; it is equal to u, as pronounced by the common people in many counties of Scotland, in the word *guide*; â is equal to a in all.*

* A is not exactly a long here; it is perhaps as near e in met as a in make, but a will not be so readily mistaken. It is impossible to convey the pronunciation accurately without the tongue.

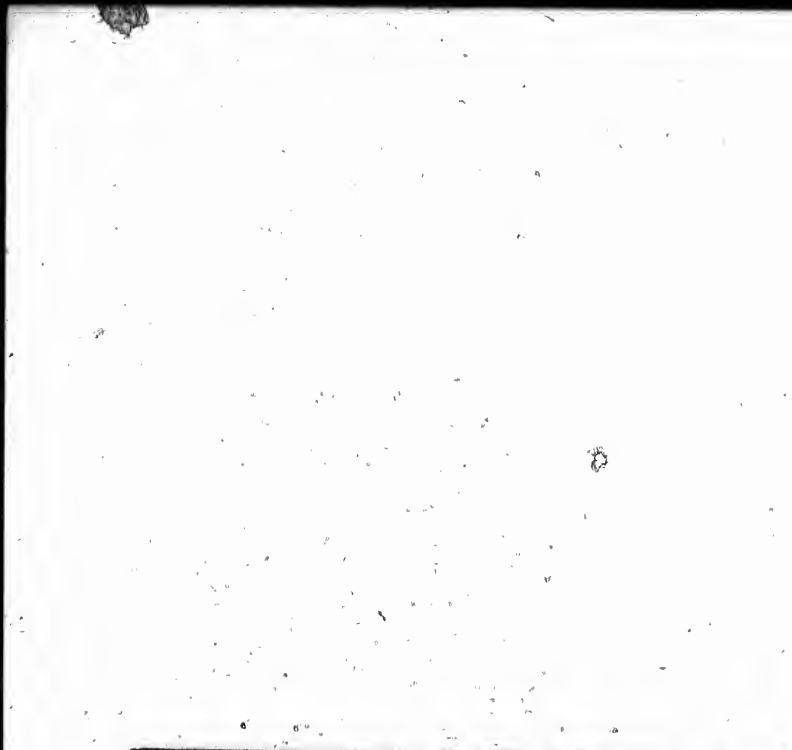
Chef d'or
 Ci-devan
 Comme
 Con am
 Congé d'
 Cortège,
 Coup de
 Coup d'o
 Coup de
 Début, d
 Dépôt, d
 Dernier
 Double
 Douceur
 Dieu et
 Eclat, e-
 Elève, e-
 En ben p
 En masse
 En pass
 Ennuï, en
 Faux pas
 Fête, fet.
 Fracas, t
 thing t
 Hauteur,
 Honi soit
 Je ne sais
 Jeu de m
 Jeu d'esp
 Mal-à-pro
 Mauvaise
 Mot du g
 Naïveté,
 Outre, t-
 Petit mal
 Protégé,
 Rouge, r
 Sang fro
 Sans, san
 Savant, s
 Soi-disant
 Surveillan

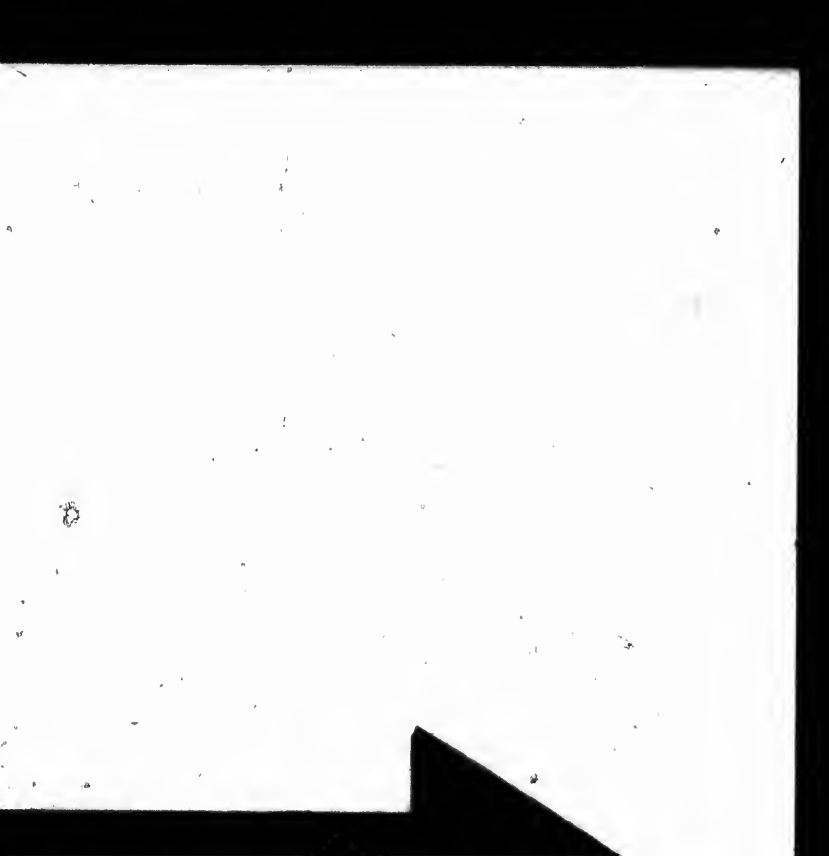
- Chef d'œuvre, she doo'vr, a masterpiece.
- Ci-devant, sê-de-vang', formerly.
- Comme il faut, com-il fô, as it should be. [of affection.
- Con amore, con-a-mo'râ (Italian), with love; with partiality
- Congé d'élire, kong-zhâ de-leer', leave to elect or choose.
- Cortège, kor-tâzh', a train of attendants.
- Coup de grâce, kû-de-grâss', a stroke of mercy; the finishing stroke.
- Coup d'œil, kû-dâ-ê, a peep; a glance of the eye.
- Coup de main, kû-de-mang', a sudden or bold enterprise.
- Début, de-boo', first appearance in public.
- Dépôt, dê-pô', a storehouse or magazine.
- Dernier ressort, dern'-yâ-res-sor', the last shift or resource.
- Double entendre, dôbl ang-tang'dr, double meaning, one in an
- Douceur, dû-soor', a present or bribe. [immodest scuss.
- Dieu et mon droit, dyoo'e-mong-drwâ, God and my right.
- Eclat, e-klâ, splendour; applause.
- Elève, e-lâv', pupil.
- En bon point, ang-bong-pwang', in good condition; jolly.
- En masse, ang mass', in a body or mass.
- En passant, ang-pas-sang', by the way; in passing; by the by.
- Ennui, eng-nûee, wearisomeness; lassitude; tediousness.
- Faux pas, fô-pâ, a slip; misconduct.
- Fête, fet, a feast or entertainment.
- Fracas, fra-ôâ, bustle; a slight quarrel; more ado about the thing than it is worth.
- Hauteur, ho-toor', haughtiness. [him that evil thinks.
- Honi soit qui mal y pense, hō-nê-swâ-kê-mâl ê pangs', evil be to
- Je ne sais quoi, zhe ne sâ kwâ, I know not what.
- Jeu de mots, zhoo de mô', a play upon words.
- Jeu d'esprit, zhoo de-spree, a display of wit; a witticism.
- Mal-à-propos, mal ap-ro-pô', unfit; out of time or place.
- Mauvaise honte, mô-vâz-hônt', false modesty.
- Mot du guét, mô doo gâ, a watchword.
- Naïveté, na-iv-tâ', ingenuousness, simplicity, innocence.
- Outré, ô-trâ', eccentric; blustering; wild; not gentle.
- Petit maître, pe-tê mâ'tr, a beau; a fop.
- Protégé, pro-tâ-zhâ', a person patronised and protected
- Rouge, rôzh, red, or a kind of red paint for the face
- Sang froid, sang frwâ, cold blood; indifference
- Sans, sang, without.
- Savant, sa-vang, a wise or learned man.
- Soi-disant, swâ-dê-zang', self-styled; pretended.
- Surveillance, sur-ve-lîangs', superintendence, keeping an eye upon

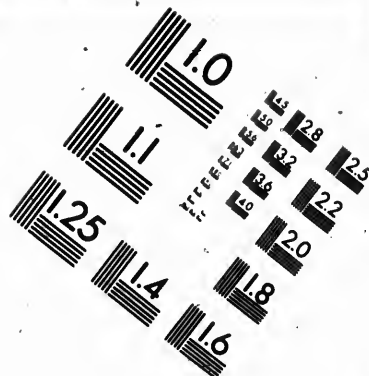
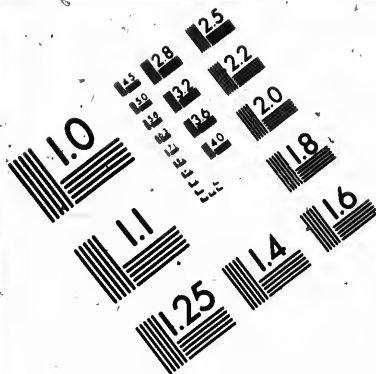
80



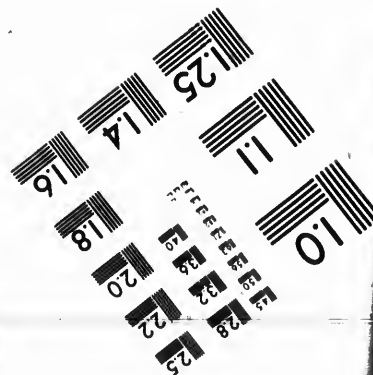
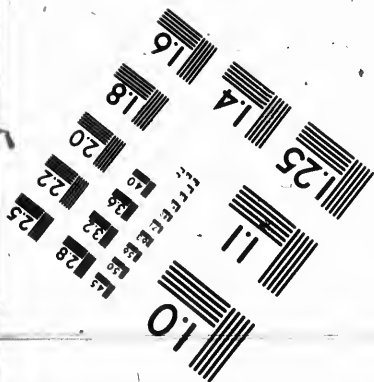
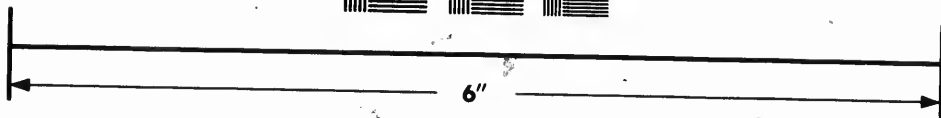
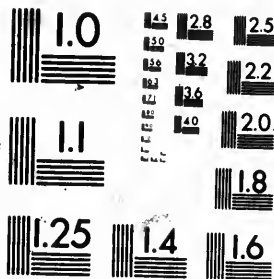








**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
E E E E E
13 28
32
18 22
20
18
5

11
10
E

- Tapis, ta-pee, *the carpet.*
 Tête-à-tête, tet a tet, *face to face, a private conversation.*
 Tout ensemble, tû-tang-sangbl, *the whole together.*
 Trait, trâ, *feature, touch, arrow, shaft.*
 Un bel esprit, oong bel e-spre, *a fine wit, a virtuoso.*
 Valet-de-chambre, va-lâ de shang'br, *a valet or footman.*
 Vis-à-vis, vâ-za-vee', *over the way, opposite.*
 Vive le roi, veev le rwâ, *long live the king.*

LATIN PHRASES.

The pronunciation has not been added to the Latin, because every letter is sounded.

1. A long or short over a vowel denotes both the accented syllable and the quantity of the vowel in English.

2. T, c, or s, before a vowel sounds *sha*.

3. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first.

- A fortiori, *with stronger reason, much more.*
 A posteriori, *from the effect, from the latter, from behind.*
 A priori, *from the former, from before, from the nature or cause.*
 Ab initio, *from the beginning.*
 Ab urbe cœdita, *from the building of the city; abridged thus, A.U.C.*
 Ad captandum vulgus, *to ensnare the vulgar.*
 Ad infinitum, *to infinity, without end.*
 Ad libitum, *at pleasure.*
 Ad referendum, *for consideration.*
 Ad valorem, *according to value.*
 Alias (â-le-as), *otherwise.*
 Alibi (âl-i-bi), *elsewhere.*
 Alma mäter, *the university.*
 Anglice (Ang-gil-cy), *in English.*
 Anno Dômini, *in the year of our Lord.—A.D.*
 Anno Mundi, *in the year of the world.—A.M.*
 Arcanum, *a secret.*
 Arcana impèrii, *state secrets.*
 Argumentum ad fidem, *an appeal to our faith.*
 Argumentum ad hominem, *an appeal to the professed principles or practices of the adversary.*
 Argumentum ad iudicium, *an appeal to the common sense of mankind.*
 Argumentum ad passiones, *an appeal to the passions.*
 Argumentum ad pòpulum, *an appeal to the people.*
 Audi alteram partem, *hear the other party; hear both sides.*
 Bona fide, *in reality, in good faith.*
 Cœcòthes scribendi, *an tick for writing.*
 Caput mòrtuum, *the worthless remains; dead head.*
 Cæteris (æ) pàribus, *other circumstances being equal.*
 Compos mentis, *in one's senses.*
 Contra, *against.*
 Cum privilegio, *with privilege.*
 Dâta, *things granted.*
 De facto, *in fact, in reality.*
 De jure, *in right, in law.* [God.
 Dei Gràtia, *by the grace or favour of*
 Deo volente (D.V.), *God willing.*
 Desideratum, *something desirable, or much wanted.*
 Desunt cætera, *the rest is wanting.*
 Dòmine dirige nos, *O Lord direct us.*
 Dramatis personæ, *characters represented.*
 Durante placito, *during pleasure.*
 Durante vita, *during life.*
 Ergo, *therefore.*
 Errata, *errors.—Erratum, an error.*
 Esto perpétua, *let it be perpetual.*
 Et cætera, *and the rest; contr, &c.*
 Ex officio, *officially, by virtue of office.*
 Ex parte, *on one side.*
 Ex tempore, *without premeditation.*
 Excerpta, *extracts.*
 Exempli gràtia, *as for example; contracted, e. g.*

Fac si
 Fiat,
 Flagn
 Grati
 Hora
 Humi
 Ibtide
 Id est
 Idem,
 Ignor
 Impr
 In loc
 In prò
 In sta
 In ter
 Ipse d
 Ipse f
 Ipse j
 Item,
 Jure d
 Jure h
 Jus gè
 Labor
 come
 Lapsus
 Locati
 Locum
 Magna
 basis
 Memen
 Memor
 recor
 Meum
 Multum
 great
 Ne plu
 beyon
 Ne quid
 is goo
 Nem. oc
 te), na
 Nem. di
 nome a
 Nemo n
 shall
 Nisi Dò
 de wit
 Nolens
 Non con
 mind.
 Norma
 O tàmpe
 O the
 Omnes,
 Onus pr
 Ore tenu
 Passim,
 Per diem
 Per se, &

- Facsimile, exact copy or resemblance.
 Fiat, let it be done or made.
 Fragrante bello, during hostilities.
 Gratia, for nothing.
 Hora fugit, the hour or time flies.
 Humānum est errāre, to err is human.
 Ibidem, in the same place; contr., *ib.*
 Id est, that is; contracted, *i. e.*
 Idem, the same. [tender.
 Ignorāmus, a vain uninformed pre-
 Imprimis, in the first place.
 In loco, in this place.
 In propria persona, in his own person.
 In statu quo, in the former state.
 In terrōrem, as a warning.
 Ipse dixit, his sole assertion.
 Ipso facto, by the act itself.
 Ipso jure, by the law itself.
 Item, also or article.
 Jure divino, by divine right.
 Jure humanō, by human law.
 Jus gentium, the law of nations.
 Labor omnia vincit, labour over-
 comes everything.
 Lapsus linguae, a slip of the tongue.
 Licentia vatum, a poetical license.
 Locum tenens, deputy, substitute.
 Magna charta, the great charter; the
 basis of our laws and liberties.
 Memento mori, remember death.
 Memorabilia, matters deserving of
 record.
 Meum et tuum, mine and thine.
 Multum in parvo, much in little, a
 great deal in few words.
 Ne plus ultra, no farther, nothing
 beyond.
 Ne quid nimis, too much of one thing
 is good for nothing.
 Nem. con. (for *nemine contradicen-*
te), none opposing.
 Nem. dis. (for *nemine dissente*nte),
 none disagreeing.
 Nemo me impune lacesset, no one
 shall provoke me with impunity.
 Nisi Dominus frustra, unless the Lord
 be with us, all efforts are in vain.
 Nolens volens, willing or unwilling.
 Non compos mentis, not of a sound
 mind. [of speaking.
 Norma loquendi, the rule or pattern.
 O tempora, O mores, O the times,
 O the manners.
 Omnes, all. [anything.
 Onus probandi, the burden of proving.
 Ore tenus, from the mouth only.
 Passim, everywhere.
 Per diem, by the day.
 Per se, by itself, alone.
- Posse comitatus, the civil power of
 the county.
 Prima vista, at first view, or at first
 sight.
 Primum mobile, the main spring.
 Pro bono publico, for the good of the
 public.
 Pro et con, for and against.
 Pro forma, for form's sake.
 Pro loco et tempore, for the place
 and time.
 Pro re nata, as occasion serves.
 Pro rege, lege, et grege, for the
 king, the constitution, and the people.
 Probatum est, it is tried or proved.
 Quo animo, with what mind.
 Quo jure, by what right
 Quoad, as far as.
 Quondam, formerly.
 Regina, a queen.
 Res publica, the commonwealth.
 Resurgam, I shall rise again.
 Rex, a king.
 Senatus consultum, a decree of the
 Senatim, in regular order. [senate.
 Sine die, without specifying any par-
 ticular day.
 Sine qua non, an indispensable pre-
 requisite or condition.
 Statu quo, in the state in which it was.
 Sub poena, under a penalty.
 Sui generis, the only one of his kind,
 singular.
 Summum bonum, the chief good.
 Supra, above.
 Toties quoties, as often as.
 Triajuncta in uno, three joined in one.
 Ultimus, the last (contracted *ult.*)
 Una voce, with one voice, unanimously.
 Uti possidetis, as ye possess, or pre-
 sent possession. (ant.
 Utile dulci, the useful with the pleas-
 Vade mecum, go with me; a book fit
 for being a constant companion.
 Vale, farewell.
 Verbatim, word for word.
 Versus, against.
 Veto, I forbid.
 Vis, by the way of.
 Vice, in the room of.
 Vice versa, the reverse.
 Vide, see (contracted into *v.*)
 Vide ut supra, see as above.
 Vis poetica, poetic genius.
 Viva voce, orally; by word of mouth.
 Vivant rex et regina, long live the
 king and the queen.
 Vox populi, the voice of the people.
 Vulgo, commonly.

because

accented

the other

nd faith.
itch for

less re-

circum-

ness.

lege.

[God.
favour of
willing.
desirable,wanting.
direct us.
ters rep-

measure.

an error.
poetical.contr., the
virtus of

meditation.

example;

A
into
these

A
at le

A
asser
flesh
ing i

A
plete
as, *E*
their

A
of w

* It
only on

† He
deals w
person
words

APPENDIX.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

ANALYSIS treats of the division of SENTENCES into their MEMBERS, and of the RELATIONS which these members bear to one another.

A Sentence is a combination of words making at least one complete assertion.

A sentence which makes only one complete assertion is called a *Simple** sentence; as, *All flesh is grass. Nothing could stop that astonishing infantry.*

A sentence which makes two or more complete assertions is called a *Compound* sentence; as, *He chid their wanderings, but he relieved their pain.*

A Member of a sentence is a word, or a group† of words, expressing a single idea; as, *The*

* It has already been observed (p. 81) that a simple sentence contain only one finite verb—that is, only one verb having number and person.

† Herein lies the difference between *analysis* and *parsing*. Parsing deals with each word in a sentence separately, specifying its number, person, gender, tense, mood, voice, &c. Analysis regards a group of words as a separate member when they express a single idea.

end | of the pole | *struck* | *George* | *smartly* | on
 the head. | *He* | that hath knowledge | *spareth*
 his words. |

Each member of a sentence may be a *word*, a *phrase*, or a *clause*.

A *Phrase* is a group of words expressing a single idea, but not containing a finite verb; as, *On the return* | of spring. *The ice having been** *weak.* *To have been published.*

A *Clause* is a member of a sentence which contains a finite verb within itself; as, *When spring RETURNS.* *As the ice WAS weak.* *That it HAS BEEN PUBLISHED.*

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

Every Simple sentence may be divided into two parts,—the *Subject* and the *Predicate*.

The *Predicate* is that part of the sentence which *asserts* something; the *Subject* *names* the person or thing about which the assertion is made.

The part of speech which *asserts* is the *verb*; therefore every *predicate* must contain a *verb*.

The part of speech which *names* things is the *noun*; therefore every *subject* must contain a *noun*, or some word equivalent to a noun.

In proceeding to analyze a sentence, *first* find the *verb*: the verb and its adjuncts, or depen-

* Participles and infinitives are not *finite* verbs, as they have not person or number. They cannot therefore make assertions.

dent
 the
 who?
 e.g., I
 sat is
 his co
 is, W
 Lord
 follow
 analy

The L

Bo
 was
 him f
 dead.
 despa
 the a
 defer

* Wh
 omitted
 † The
 There is
 such ser
 ‡ Obse
 and tha

dent words, form the *predicate*: *secondly*, turn the predicate into a question beginning with *who?* or *what?* The answer will be the *subject*: e.g., Lord William sat at his castle gate. Here, *sat* is the verb; therefore the *predicate* is *sat at his castle gate*. This, in the form of a question, is, *Who sat at his castle gate?* The answer is, *Lord William*; and that is the *subject*. The following examples show this general kind of analysis:—

Subject.	Predicate.
<i>Kings</i>	<i>reign.</i>
<i>British soldiers</i>	<i>are very hardy.</i>
<i>The Duke of Wellington</i>	<i>gained many victories.</i>
[<i>You</i>] *	<i>return quickly.</i>
<i>There</i> †	<i>is a tide in the affairs of men.</i>

EXERCISES.

Divide into Subject and Predicate. †

Boats sail. The wind blows. The mother was very tired. The good doctor has visited him frequently. The wife of our clergyman is dead. Walking is a healthy exercise. Never despair. To err is human. For many an hour the anxious mother watched her child. Hope deferred maketh the heart sick. Never was

* When the verb is in the imperative mood, the subject is usually omitted. In analyzing such sentences, the subject must be supplied.

† The true subject in this sentence is "a tide in the affairs of men." *There* is a pronoun standing in place of the true subject. Nevertheless such sentences had better be analyzed as above.

‡ Observe that the subject does not always stand first in the sentence, and that the words of the predicate do not always stand together.

assistance more necessary. A wounded spirit who can bear? Down came the blow. The steed along the drawbridge flies. Miserable comforters are ye all. How forcible are right words! The aged minstrel audience gained. Absence of occupation is not rest. Superfluous lags the veteran on the stage. To be of no church is dangerous. Necessity is the argument of tyrants. The trappings of a monarchy would set up an ordinary commonwealth. The poorest man may in his cottage bid defiance to all the force of the crown. Judge not according to the appearance. A borrower is servant to the lender. Drowsiness shall clothe a man with rags.

THE PARTS OF THE SUBJECT.

The *Subject* may be subdivided into the *Nominative* to the verb, and qualifying or dependent words called *Attributes*.

THE NOMINATIVE.

The *Nominative* is generally a *Noun* or *Pronoun*; but it may be any word or phrase equivalent to a noun. The following are examples of the different forms of the *Nominative*:—

A Noun; as, The new *master* has arrived.

A Pronoun; as, *He* is a very pleasant man.

An Adjective used as a Noun; as, *The rich* should care for the poor.

A P
sary m
An
is deat

The
word,
consist
follow

An
soon o

A
moss.

A
Conqu

A
alway

A
mercy

said t

Sev

noun ;
son o
father

* See

† See

‡ As t
it is not

§ Noun
case, are

¶ In s
numbers

A Participle; * as, *The preparing* of the necessary materials requires time.

An Infinitive Phrase; † as, *To drink* poison is death.

THE ATTRIBUTE.

The *Attribute*, when it consists of a single word, is generally an *Adjective*; but it may consist of any qualifying word or phrase. The following are its different forms:—

An Adjective; as, The † *humble* boon was soon obtained.

A Participle; as, *Rolling* stones gather no moss.

A Noun in Apposition; § as, *William the Conqueror* died in France.

A Possessive Case; as, *Henry's* promises were always kept. *Her* tears flowed fast.

A Prepositional Phrase; as, The quality of *mercy* is not strained. The spots *on the sun* are said to vary from year to year.

Several attributes || may qualify the same noun; as, *The valiant* Edward, *the Black Prince*, son of *Edward III.*, died a year before his father.

* See p. 88, Rule XII.

† See p. 68, and p. 101, Rule XX.

‡ As the article is inseparable from the noun to which it is attached, it is not considered an *attribute*.

§ Nouns or pronouns signifying the same thing, and agreeing in case, are said to be in *apposition*. See p. 88, Rule VII. part 2.

|| In analyzing, the different attributes to the same noun should be numbered separately; 1, 2, 3, &c.

EXERCISES.

*Divide into Nominative, Attribute, and Predicate.**

Honest men make many friends. The pictures in this book are very beautiful. His brother deceived him. Cowper the poet died in 1800. Heaps of wounded and slain dotted the side of the hill. King Charles the First was an unfortunate monarch. The arrival of the doctor put an end to our suspense. The shepherd's dog caught a hare. The best reward of the virtuous man is the approval of his conscience. A forgiving spirit is better than riches. Richard Crookback was a cruel king. The parting gleam of sunshine kissed that haughty scroll of gold. A foreign nation is a contemporaneous posterity. Full many a flower is born to blush unseen. The sentinel on Whitehall gate looked forth into the night. Burned Marmion's swarthy cheek like fire. The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

Many a shaft, at random sent,
Finds mark the archer never meant.

Affliction's sons are brothers in distress. This goodly frame, the earth, seems to me a sterile promontory.

THE PARTS OF THE PREDICATE.

The *Predicate* may be subdivided into the finite *Verb*, its *Complements*, and its *Adverbials*.

* *Example*: A thing of beauty is a joy for ever. *Nominative*, a thing; *attribute*, of beauty; *predicate*, is a joy for ever.

THE VERB.

A *Finite Verb* is a verb which has person, number, and tense; or which has a nominative. It is therefore any part of the verb (pp. 34-40) except the Infinitive and the Participles.

THE COMPLEMENT.

The *Complement* is any word or phrase depending upon a verb that does not of itself make complete sense: *e.g.*, :

The Objective * case after an active verb; as, The keeper shot a hare.

The Infinitive † mood governed by another verb; as, He promised to forgive me.

The Word or Phrase † following the verbs *to be* and *to become*; as, Milton was a poet. Philip became haughty. His drawings were amongst the best.

The Nominative Case after a passive verb of naming; § as, The new scholar is called David.

Some verbs are followed by *more than one* complement of different kinds; as, His father taught (1) *him* (2) *reading*. The emperor made (1) *his son* (2) *a general*. The judge ordered (1) *him* (2) *to be imprisoned*.

In the passive voice of these verbs, the first complement is made the nominative, and the second remains as the complement; as, He was taught *reading* by his father. The emperor's

* See p. 88, Rule II.

† See p. 87, Rule VI.

‡ See p. 72, and p. 90, Rule IX.

§ See p. 90, foot-note, par. 4.

son was made a general. He was ordered to be imprisoned.

The Complement, like the Nominative, may be accompanied by *attributive* words or phrases; * as, The midnight brought *the signal* sound of strife.

EXERCISES.

On the Complement.†

Shakespeare is our greatest dramatist. The tenant was ordered to leave the farm. William conquered Harold. The hawk pursued a sparrow. Gentleness overcomes many foes. The Home Secretary made his friend a bishop. Procrastination is the thief of time. The Irish guns continued to roar all night. I make the netted sunbeams dance. The prisoner was declared to be guilty. Pope wrote the *Essay on Man*. Elizabeth was resolute and self-willed. George, the Elector of Hanover, became King of England. Young men think old men fools. Virtue is its own reward. The meeting was thought ominous by the people. Henry was violent in temper. Beauty soon grows familiar to the lover. Care keeps his watch in every old man's eye. She never told her love. Such joy ambition finds. Let this great maxim be

* In analyzing, each attribute of the Complement should be enclosed in brackets.

† *Examples*: Milton was a great poet; *Complement*, a (great) poet. The general commanded the infantry to advance; *Complements*, (1) the infantry, (2) to advance.

my
the
lost
was
orate
cond
the
edge
creat
a ha
his
the s

TH
to th
speci

Ac
to th

me
sig
we
wh

on
ha

* Th
Absolut
native
dition, d

my virtue's guide. One touch of nature makes the whole world kin. Her form had yet not lost all its original brightness. His third son was named Edmund Burke, after the great orator. He is often asked his name. He was condemned to die. We were taught history by the clergyman. The blow blunted the keen edge of his sword. Marlborough was next created a Duke. The father has given his son a handsome volume. He has never sent me his address. The general immediately gave the signal to advance.

THE ADVERBIAL.

The *Adverbial* is any word or phrase added to the verb in order to modify its meaning, or specify some circumstance about it.

Adverbials are classified as follows, according to the ideas they express, viz. :—

Adverbials of Time; soon, thrice, immediately, in a few minutes, for a month, the signal being given; as, *The signal being given*,* we began the attack; *i. e.*, we began the attack *when* the signal was given.

Adverbials of Place; here, hence, thither, on the ground, to Egypt; as, The expedition has gone *to Egypt*.

* This is called an *Absolute Phrase*, corresponding with the *Ablative Absolute* in Latin Syntax. The noun *signal* is said to be in the *Nominative Case Absolute*. The *Absolute Phrase* also expresses *cause*, *condition*, &c.

Adverbials of Manner; thus, well, by accident, with his face to the foe; as, He was found *with his face to the foe*.

Adverbials of Degree; much, not, so, as, but (only), in a great measure, not at all; as, I blame him *in a great measure* for the accident.

Adverbials of Cause;* therefore, for that reason, to read the newspapers, of the plague; as, Hundreds died *of the plague* every day.

Adverbials of Effect; to distraction, in ruin, to prove him innocent; as, All this goes *to prove him innocent*. This will end *in ruin*.

Adverbials of Condition; † with perseverance, time permitting; as, *Time permitting*, † I shall explain the matter; *i.e., if* time permits.

Adverbials of Concession; § nevertheless, notwithstanding his failure; as, he persevered, *notwithstanding his failure*; *i.e., though* he had failed.

An Adverbial may be attached to an adjective or to an adverb, as well as to a verb; as, He returned *much more* quickly than he went. A

* Purpose is included in this class. When I say, "He goes *to read the newspapers*," the purpose of his going is the cause why he goes.

† In an Adverbial of Condition, something is supposed as the reason of something else following; as, *With perseverance* he will succeed; *i.e., if* he perseveres, he will succeed.

‡ An Absolute Phrase. See p. 189, note.

§ In an Adverbial of Concession, something is granted as the reason why something else should not follow; as, *In spite of his efforts* he failed, *i.e., it is granted* that he made efforts, but, *contrary to our expectations*, he failed.

gene
cred
anal
cate.

TH
has
died
He v
in n
reco
like
to r
favo
men
ners
him
whol
the
lost
ramb
shall
capt
his s
persi
bury
many

* En
London

general victorious *by accident* deserves little credit. But the *Adverbial* of the sentence in analysis belongs only to the verb of the predicate.

EXERCISES.

*On the Adverbial.**

The captain has gone to Rome. The doctor has called thrice at the hotel. Both brothers died of fever. She loved him to distraction. He will undoubtedly succeed. The explanation in no respect satisfies us. With care he may recover his position. He nevertheless behaved like a coward. Ships of war are made of iron, to resist cannon-balls. The answer being unfavourable, the attack on the forts was recommenced. The station was decorated with banners and evergreens. Slowly and sadly we laid him down. The bonfires shone bright along the whole circuit of the ramparts. Notwithstanding the efforts of the crew, the cargo was entirely lost. I have often left my childish sports to ramble in this place. Weather permitting, we shall go to the country on Thursday. The captain altogether misunderstood the orders of his superior. In spite of repeated warnings, he persisted in incurring the danger. I come to bury Cæsar, not to praise him. Cowards die many times before their deaths.

* *Example*: He arrived in London at four o'clock. *Adverbials*, (1) in London (*place*), (2) at four o'clock (*time*).

The following Table exhibits the different members of the Simple Sentence in their different forms:—

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
		<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>	<i>Adverbial.</i>
<i>Attributive.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>			
Adjective.	Noun.	Finite	Noun (with or without attributes).	Adverb.
Possessive.	Pronoun.	Verb in any Mood or Voice.	Pronoun.	...
Apposition.	Adjective.		Adjective.	...
Phrase.	Infinitive.		Infinitive.	...
	Phrase.		Phrase.	Phrase.

A P
tive or
inativ
a phra
Phras

1. C
2. T
- the cor
3. I
- decept
4. I
- of anti
5. M
- the he
6. T
- V

1. Old
2. The
- of
3. I
4. [Tho
5. Nels
6. Each

KINDS OF PHRASES.

A phrase in the Attribute is called an *Adjective* or *Attributive Phrase*; a phrase in the Nominative or Complement is called a *Noun Phrase*; a phrase in the Adverbial is called an *Adverbial Phrase*.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. Old men often make mistakes.
2. The thundering roar of the lion only increased the confusion.
3. I therefore asked him the circumstances of his deception.
4. Let me no longer waste the night on the page of antiquity.
5. Meantime Nelson received a severe wound in the head.
6. The service past, around the pious man,
With ready zeal each honest rustic ran.

FIRST STEP.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
1. Old men	often make mistakes.
2. The thundering roar of the lion	only increased the confusion.
3. I	therefore asked him the circum- stances of his deception.
4. [Thou]	let me no longer waste the night on the page of antiquity.
5. Nelson	meantime received a severe wound in the head.
6. Each honest rustic	ran around the pious man, with ready zeal, the service past.

COMPLETE ANALYSIS.

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
<i>Attr-Bute.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>	<i>Adverbial.</i>
1. Old	men	make	mistakes	often (<i>ti.</i>)
2. (1) thundering (2) of the lion	The roar	increased	the confusion	only (<i>deg.</i>)
3. ...	I	asked	(1) him (2) the circumstances (of his deception)*	therefore (<i>cause</i>)
4. ...	[Thou]	let	(1) me (2) waste (the night on the page of antiquity)*	no longer (<i>si.</i>)
5. ...	Nelson	received	a (severe) wound	(1) in the head (<i>pl.</i>) (2) meantime (<i>ti.</i>)
6. (1) Each (2) honest rustic	ran	...	...	(1) the service past (<i>ti.</i>) (2) around the pious man (<i>pl.</i>) (3) with ready seal (<i>man.</i>)

* Attributes to the Complement, and Adjuncts to the Adverbial, should be enclosed in round brackets; words supplied, in square brackets.

† For, the service being past; an *Absolute Phrase*; see p. 186, note.

It is
mistak
its dai
since h
ness.
Observ
no. fur
caliph
birthd
You w
I was
the. go
exhaus
Sir Ro
fied th
of his
moore
Word
noble
A mar
proach
thus, t
The fi
maste

To
Is v
Notwi
hopes
to day

EXERCISES.

Simple Sentences for Analysis.

It is a splendid picture. You are certainly mistaken. Now, every considerable town has its daily newspaper. Many years have passed since his death. Nothing can exceed his kindness. There were several literary men there. Observe the moon to-night. We shall proceed no further in this business. At length the caliph approached him reverently. On my birthday, my brother sent me a delightful book. You wronged yourself to write in such a case. I was touched with a secret joy at the sight of the good old man. Their ammunition being exhausted, the garrison surrendered. My friend Sir Roger, being a good churchman, has beautified the inside of his church with several texts of his own choosing. The French admiral had moored his fleet in Aboukir Bay. Put the Word of God into the hands of my son. His noble conduct well deserved honourable reward. A man's first care should be to avoid the reproaches of his own heart. Things remaining thus, the secretary's character will suffer greatly. The first two ships of the French line were dismantled in a quarter of an hour.

With taper light

To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.

Notwithstanding the most heroic efforts, the hopes of the French visibly declined from day to day. Now for the first time, I observed,

* Attributes to the Complement, and Adjuncts to the Adverbial, should be enclosed in crossed brackets; words supplied, in square brackets.
† For, the service being past; an Absolute Phrase; see p. 189, note.

walking close to the feet of his horse, a little boy about ten years of age.

Meanwhile, our primitive great sire to meet,
His godlike guest walks forth.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

When any member of a simple sentence—that is, of a sentence containing only one independent assertion—is in the form of a clause, the sentence is called *Complex*; as, A man *who is learned** is respected.

In a *Complex Sentence*, there are at least two finite verbs, and therefore at least two clauses. The clause containing the leading assertion is called the *Principal Clause*; as, *A (certain) man is respected*. The clauses containing explanatory assertions are called *Subordinate Clauses*; as, *Who is learned*, &c.

A *Principal* clause may stand by itself and make complete sense; as, *A man is respected*: a *Subordinate* clause cannot make complete sense by itself; as, *Who is learned*.

A *Subordinate* clause may further be known by this,—that it is always introduced by a relative pronoun, or by a conjunction, which marks its dependence on some part of the principal clause; as, *He is ill because he is unhappy*. We started *as* the clock struck. The book

* A man *who is learned*, is the same as a man *of learning* or a *learned man*. The sentence is therefore *simple* and not *compounded*, inasmuch as it contains only one complete assertion; but since it contains an Attribute in the form of a clause, it is called *complex*.

which
that h

In
clause
Conne

Sub
spondi
tioned
which
Clause
and
adject

Any
is att
tive Cl
place

The
by a r
is the
such v
to int
solved
which,
where

A C
tive c
tive an
found,

which you gave me is lost. The mother cried *that* her child was drowning.

In Analysis, the words used to introduce clauses, or to join them together, are called *Connectives*.

Subordinate Clauses are of three kinds, corresponding with the three kinds of phrases mentioned above (p. 193), viz.:—*Adjective Clauses*, which qualify nouns or describe things; *Noun Clauses*, which stand for nouns or name things; and *Adverbial Clauses*, which modify verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

Any clause which *describes* a thing, or which is attached to a noun or pronoun, is an *Adjective Clause*; as, The house *that* Jack built. The place *where* I was born. He *whom* ye seek.

The *Adjective* clause is generally introduced by a relative pronoun, the antecedent of which is the word qualified by the clause. Even when such words as *when, where, why, &c.*, are used to introduce clauses, each of them may be resolved into a preposition and a relative—in *which, at which, for which, &c.*; as, The place *where* (*in which*) I was born.

A *Compound Relative* * introducing an adjective clause, must be resolved into a demonstrative and a relative; as, Show me *what* you have found, *i.e.*, show me *that, which* you have found.

* See p. 18; also pp. 69, 70; and K. p. 43.

Whoever said so spoke falsely, *i.e.*, *Any one* spoke falsely, *who* said so.

When this separation is made, the demonstrative forms part of the principal clause, and the relative belongs to the subordinate clause.

When the antecedent is omitted,* it must be supplied before the sentence is analyzed; as, *Who* steals my purse steals trash, *i.e.*, *He* steals trash, *who* steals my purse.

When the relative is in the objective case, it is often omitted;* as, It is not easy to love those (*whom*) we do not esteem.

Sometimes a relative in the nominative case is omitted, when its antecedent immediately precedes the subordinate verb; as, I have a brother (*who*) is condemned to die.

After negatives, the adjective clause is frequently introduced by *but*, meaning *which not* or *that not*; as, There is *not* one of his works *but* shows marks of care and study; *i.e.*, *which* does *not* show marks of care and study.

The *Adjective* clause may be attached to a noun or pronoun in any part of the sentence; *e.g.* :—

In the Nominative; as, He *whom ye seek* is not here.

In the Attribute; as, The spire of the church *which we attend* was struck by lightning.

* See p. 77; and K. p. 83, g.

In
book

In
which

Th
I ofte

you.

who

takes

spent

mona

lives

termi

clude

who

A sh

us to

I may

do on

lish

forgo

been

so lat

Th

W

* *Exa*
sive clau

In the Complement; as, I have twice read the book *which you lent me*.

In the Adverbial; as, He died in the house *which was given him by the queen*.

EXERCISES.

*On Adjective Clauses.**

The man who painted that picture is dead. I often think of the night which I spent with you. What you report may be quite true. He who tells a lie knows not what a task he undertakes. I have lately visited the place where I spent the happy years of my boyhood. I am monarch of all I survey. Who was the thane lives yet. The treaty of Westphalia, which terminated the Thirty Years' War, was concluded in 1648. I saw two gentlemen by me, who were in the same ridiculous circumstances. A shower then overtook us, which compelled us to seek shelter.

Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero we buried.

I may do that I shall be sorry for. Strive to do only that is right. It seemed as if the English people had, in this brief period, utterly forgotten the mighty princess whose reign had been so glorious, and over whose bier they had so lately mourned.

The nurse sleeps sweetly, hired to watch the sick,
Whom snoring she disturbs.

* *Example*: I have just seen the lady who wrote that letter. *Adjective clause*, who wrote that letter, *describing lady*.

I have often wandered in fields which are now covered with houses. The frame of the picture that you gave me is beautifully carved. There is no one but believes in his honesty. Nothing which I could do would repay you for the kindness with which you have treated me, ever since the day when we first became friends.

There is no fireside, howsoe'er defended,
But has one vacant chair.

THE NOUN CLAUSE.

Any clause which *names* a thing, or which occupies the place of a noun in any part of the sentence, is a *Noun Clause*; as, I believe *that he has deceived me*. *That you have wronged me* is quite evident.*

The *Noun* clause is generally introduced by the conjunction *that*; † but the conjunction is often omitted; as, It is said (*that*) he has failed.

When two or more *Noun* clauses are stated alternatively, the first is introduced by *whether*, the others by *or*; as, I cannot discover *whether* the letter was composed by himself, *or* was written by him to his father's dictation.

Sometimes only one alternative is stated, the other being implied. In this case the *Noun* clause is introduced by the conjunctions *whether*

* The test of the noun clause is that the word "something" may always be put in its place; e.g., I believe *something*—namely, that he has deceived me. *Something* is quite evident—namely, that you have wronged me.

† This conjunction is really the demonstrative pronoun, used to point out the clause following it.

and i
(or no

A
govern
thinks
says,
mothe

Wh
or sta
in the
(I thi
classi
will a
learni

The
to the
spoke
that E
ments

We
brave
he is
speaks
God.
hen o
to bel
there

* *Eza*
that he

and *if*; as, It is uncertain *whether* he is ready (or not). Ask him *if* he will help you.

A quotation is generally a *Noun* clause, governed by such words as *he said, the author thinks, it is a well-known saying*; as, Burke says, that "early and provident fear is the mother of safety."

When the *Noun* clause expresses an opinion, or states a fact, the principal clause may be in the form of a parenthesis; as, Every one (I think) will acknowledge the importance of classical learning; *i.e.*, I think *that* every one will acknowledge the importance of classical learning.

The *Noun* clause is frequently in apposition to the pronoun *it*; as, Elizabeth, it is true, often spoke curtly to her parliaments; *i.e.*, *It* (namely, *that* Elizabeth often spoke curtly to her parliaments) is true.

EXERCISES.

*On Noun Clauses.**

We believe that he is honest. That he is brave is unquestionable. I have been told he is a great gambler. I doubt whether he speaks the truth. That thou art happy owe to God. I'll warrant we'll never see him sell his hen on a rainy day. He could not be brought to believe that his sister was dead. They say there is divinity in odd numbers. I would that

* *Example: They say that he has lost his manuscript. Noun clause, that he has lost his manuscript, objective case, governed by say.*

I were low laid in my grave. Ask him whether he is ready.

Yet some maintain that to this day
She is a living child.

I would the gods had made thee poetical. I have often thought, says Sir Roger, it happens very well that Christmas should fall out in the middle of winter. No observation is more common, and at the same time more true, than that one half of the world are ignorant how the other half lives. These, I found, were all of them politicians. Milton says beautifully that truth is as impossible to be soiled by any outward touch as the sunbeam. Ask him if he is aware of your success.

Whether he was combined
With those of Norway, or did line the rebel
With hidden help and vantage, or that with both
He laboured in his country's wrack,—I know not.

Every one, I think, will acknowledge the justice of the verdict. Reading, says Bacon, maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

But, that thou shouldst my firmness therefore doubt
To God or thee, because we have a foe
May tempt it, I expected not to hear.

THE ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

Any clause which occupies the place of an adverb, or which modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, is an *Adverbial Clause*; as, He came *when he was called*. He goes as often as *he can*. I shall do it *if I am asked*.

Th
by t
Thei
that
abov

ne
af
he

ne
ev
re

ne
H

ne
is
lia

ne
th
St
ye

* A
act, if
The su
dent o
† In
lative
other,
clever
first ca
† (In
as of p

The nature of *Adverbial* clauses is indicated by the conjunctions which introduce them. Their classification corresponds, exactly with that of adverbial words and phrases given above (p. 189). It is as follows:—

Clauses of Time, introduced by the connectives *when, while, whenever, since, before, after, until, &c.*; as, The letter arrived *while he was there.*

Clauses of Place, introduced by the connectives *where, whither, whence, wherein, wherever, &c.*; as, He goes *wherever he pleases.* He remained *until I arrived.*

Clauses of Manner, introduced by the connectives *as, as if*; as, He speaks *as he thinks.* He acts *as if he were innocent.**

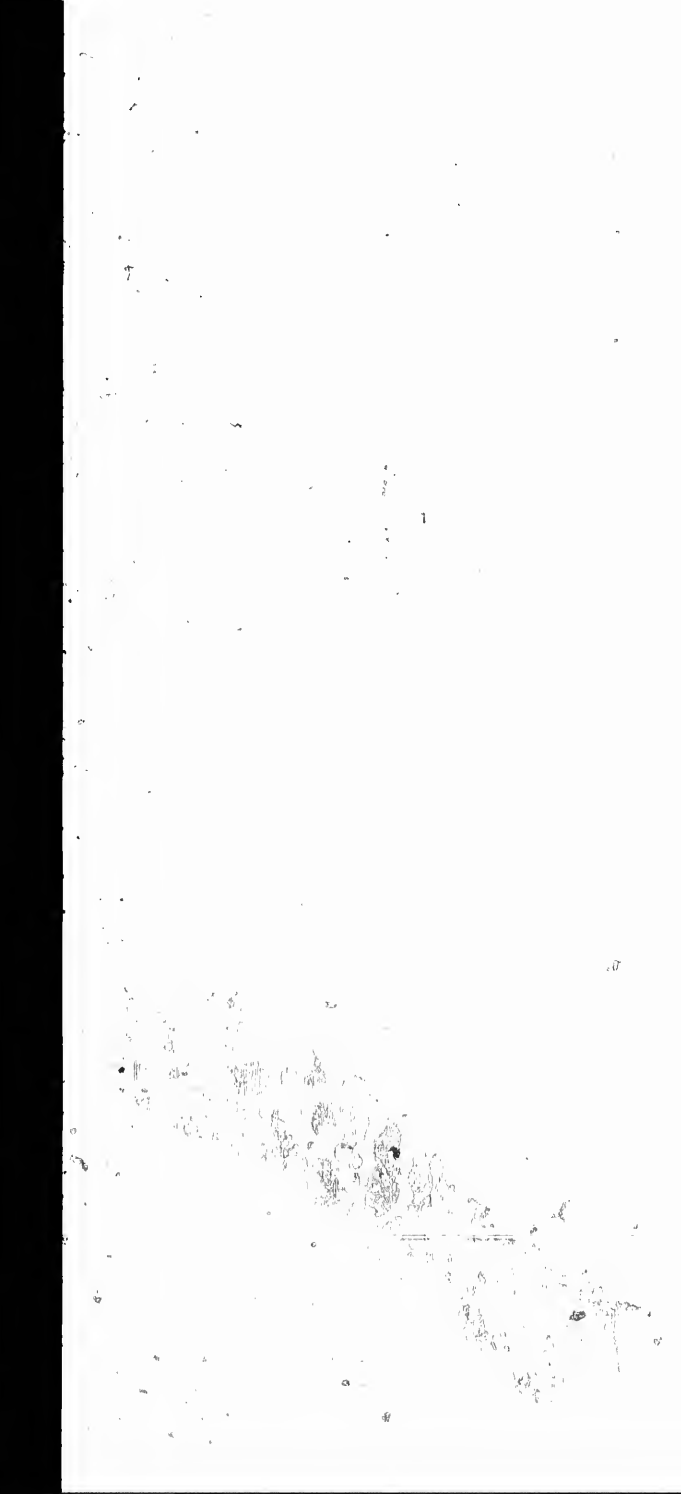
Clauses of Degree, introduced by the connectives (so) *as, (more) than, &c.*; as, William is not so clever *as his brother [is clever].* William is cleverer *than his brother [is clever].†*

Clauses of Cause, introduced by the connectives *because, for, since, as, why, (in order) that, ‡ but*; as, He went *because he was told.* Strive, *that you may succeed.* Take heed *lest ye fall.*

* *As if* is elliptical. The full sentence would be, He acts *as he would act, if he were innocent.* The true clause of manner is *as he would act.* The subsequent clause, *if he were innocent,* is a clause of condition dependent on "as he would act."

† In each of these examples, the connective is preceded by a correlative or corresponding word: in the one case the adverb *so*; in the other, the comparative *cleverer.* In both examples the *degree* of William's cleverness is measured by comparison with that of his brother. In the first case the degree is that of *equality,* in the second of *inequality.*

‡ (In order) *that* and *lest* express *purpose,* which in the case of clauses, as of phrases, is included under *cause.* See p. 190, note*.



Clauses of Effect, introduced by the connective (so) *that*; as, He speaks so low *that we cannot hear him*.

Clauses of Condition, introduced by the connectives *if, unless*; as, *If I were invited, I should go. Unless I am invited, I shall not go.*

Clauses of Concession, introduced by the connectives *though, although*; as, *Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*

EXERCISES.

*On Adverbial Clauses.**

He acted as he was told. He started when he heard the news. Let it lie where it has fallen. If you persevere, you are sure to succeed. We are often so tempted that resistance seems impossible. He will remain where he is until he is sent for. Since you are wrong, you must have made some mistake. Although he was poor, he was always contented. Unless you are quiet you will hear nothing. He did not go, as he was told to remain at home. The noise pursues me wheresoe'er I go. When I am in a serious humour, I very often walk by myself in Westminster Abbey. You have more circumspection than is wanted. Although we seldom followed advice, we were all ready enough to ask it. He speaks to me as if he were my master. The climate of England is

* *Example*: I cannot write to my cousin, as I have lost his address. *Adverbial clause, as I have lost his address, expressing cause.*

not so mild as that of France. He passed me so quickly that I did not recognise him. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now. As my heart was entirely subdued by the captivating strains I had heard, I fell down at his feet.

Eternal smiles his emptiness betray,
As shallow streams run dimpling all the way.

I will roar that I will do any man's heart good to hear me.

Had I your tongues and eyes, I'd use them so
That heaven's vault should crack.

Wherever they marched, their route was marked with blood. If there be anything that makes human nature appear ridiculous to men of superior faculties, it must be pride. The rest were long to tell, though far renowned. As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned and armed.

When here, but three days since, I came,
Bewildered in pursuit of game,
All seemed as peaceful and as still
As the mist slumbering on yon hill.

There are *three methods* of analyzing complex sentences:—(1.) They may simply be divided into *clauses*, the nature of each clause being specified; (2.) They may be analyzed in exactly the same way as simple sentences, only the principal clause being divided into its members; (3.) All the clauses, subordinate as well as principal, may be divided into their members.

Before analyzing any complex sentence, *contractions* must be expanded, and *ellipses* supplied; as, A man who is mean, or cowardly, or indolent, will not do for the post; *i.e.*, A man who is mean, or [*who is*] cowardly, or [*who is*] indolent, &c. What cannot be cured, must be endured; *i.e.*, *That* (*which* cannot be cured) must be endured. Who live to nature rarely can be poor; *i.e.*, *Those* (who live to nature) rarely can be poor.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. He is well paid that is well satisfied.
2. That thou art happy, owe to God.
3. At about half a mile's distance from our cabin, we heard the groanings of a bear, which at first startled us.
4. When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army which offered him battle at Agincourt, he ordered all his cavalry to dismount.
5. In truth there is no sadder spot on the earth than that little cemetery.
6. You have done that you should be sorry for.

FIRST, OR SIMPLEST, METHOD.

1. A.* He is well paid
 - a. That is well satisfied. (*Adjective* to "He.")

* An easy and convenient method of indicating the relations of the clauses to one another, is to mark each principal clause by a capital letter, as A, and each subordinate clause by a corresponding small letter, as a. This simple notation is borrowed from Mr Dalgleish's "Grammatical Analysis."

2. A

3. A

4. A

5. A

6. A

N
 lysis
 obser
 print
 verb

2. A. Owe [thou] to God
 - a. That thou art happy. (*Noun, comp. to "owe."*)
3. A. At about half a mile's distance from our cabin, we heard the groanings of a bear,
 - a. Which at first startled us. (*Adj. to "groanings."*)
4. A. He ordered all his cavalry to dismount,
 - a. When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army, (*Adverbial of time to "ordered."*)
 - a. Which offered him battle at Agincourt. (*Adj. to "army."*)
5. A. In truth there is no sadder spot on the earth
 - a. Than that little cemetery [is sad]. (*Adv. of degree to "sadder."*)
6. A. You have done that
 - a. For [*which*] you should be sorry. (*Adj. to "that."*)

Note.—The Second and Third Methods of Analysis are given in the following pages. It will be observed in these tables that every principal verb is printed in SMALL CAPITALS, and every subordinate verb in *italics*.

SECOND METHOD.

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
<i>Attributive.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>	<i>Adjective.</i>
1. that is well satisfied	He	IS PAID	...	well. (<i>manner</i>)
2. ...	[Thou]	OWE	(1) that thou art happy (2) to God.	...
3. ...	We	HEARD	the groanings (1. of a bear) (2. which at first startled us),	at about half a mile's distance from our cabin. (<i>place</i>)
4. ...	he	ORDERED	(1) all his cavalry (2) to dismount.	When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army (<i>time</i>) (which offered him battle at Agincourt),
5. ...	There	IS	no sadder spot (than that little cemetery [is sad], adv. to "sadder.")	(1) on the earth (<i>pl.</i>) (2) in truth (<i>deg.</i>)
6. ...	You	HAVE DONE	that (for [which] you should be sorry).	...

THIRD METHOD.

THIRD METHOD.

6.	...	YOU	HAVE DONE	that (for [which] you should be sorry).	...
----	-----	-----	-----------	---	-----

	Letter.	Kind of Clause.	Con-nective.	SUBJECT.		Verb.	PREDICATE.	
				Attribute.	Nominative.		Complement.	Adjunct.
1.	A. a.	Adj.		...	He that	IS PAID is satisfied	...	well (man.) well. (man.)
2.	A. a.	N.	that	...	[Thou] thou	OWNS art	to God happy.	...
3.	A. a.	Adj.		...	We which	HEARD startled	the groanings (of a bear) us	at ... cabin. (pl.) at first. (ti.)
4.	A. a. a.	Adv. Adj.	When	...	he Henry which	ORDERED came offered	(1) all his cavalry (2) to dismount. (1) him (2) battle	within. army (pl.) at Agincourt. (pl.)
5.	A. a.	Adv.	than	...	There cemetery	IS [is]	(no sadder) spot [sad].	(1) on the earth (pl.) (2) in truth (deg.)
6.	A. a.	Adj.		...	YOU you	HAVE DONE should be	that sorry.	... for which (ca.)

EXERCISES.

Complex Sentences for Analysis.

The prisoner declared that he was innocent. He that runs may read them. When the princess arrived, she received a splendid bouquet. Though he is above seventy, he is an active man of business. Unless he perseveres he will never succeed. He sat for several hours motionless where the rivers meet. The citadel where he shut himself up after his defeat was stormed in the following week. Their diadems were crowns of glory which should never fade away. Those had little reason to laugh who encountered them in the field of battle. Such was the dust with which the dust of Monmouth mingled. Nothing is so dangerous as pride. One of the company told me that it would play there above a week longer if the thaw continued. Mercy becomes the throned monarch better than his crown. Whatever is, is right. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. Such treatment I did not expect, for I never had a patron before. Those who are rich are not always so happy as their poorer neighbours. If it had not been that I had tested his fidelity before, I could not have believed him. My valet, who was an Irishman, fell into so great a rage at what he had heard, that he drew his sword. When I compare the figure which the Dutch make in Europe with that they assume in Asia, I am struck with surprise.

A
tains
cipal
the s
impr

TI
sent
anot
anot
sens

A
tenc
it; a
mon
it as

W
clau
said
not
moti
terro
lost
char

TI
tenc
eithe
the c
the
rible

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

A *Compound Sentence* is a sentence that contains two or more complete assertions, or principal clauses; as, The father *makes* money, and the son *spends* it. I *hate* innovation, but I *love* improvement.

The several principal clauses in a compound sentence are said to be *co-ordinate* with one another, because they are independent of one another, and each of them makes complete sense by itself.

Any principal clause in a compound sentence may have *subordinate clauses* attached to it; as, The father, *who is industrious*, makes money; and the son, *who is extravagant*, spends it as fast as he can.

CONTRACTED SENTENCES.

When a member common to two or more clauses is expressed only once, the sentence is said to be *contracted*; as, Its motion is circular, not progressive; *i.e.*, Its motion is circular, [*its motion is*] not progressive. Death had lost its terrors, and pleasure its charms; *i.e.*, Death had lost its terrors, and pleasure [*had lost*] its charms.

The principal members of compound sentences are connected by the conjunctions *and*, *either — or*, *neither — nor*, and *but*. Sometimes the conjunction is omitted; as, The wind roared, the rain came down in torrents; it was a terrible night.

There are *three methods* of analyzing compound sentences:—(1.) They may simply be divided into clauses; (2.) Each leading member may be analyzed in the same way as simple sentences, only the principal clauses being divided into their members; (3.) All the clauses, subordinate as well as principal, may be divided into their members.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. We said that the history of England is the history of progress; and when we take a comprehensive view of it, it is so.
2. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorned the venerable place;
Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
And fools who came to scoff, remained to pray.

FIRST, OR SIMPLEST, METHOD.

1. A. We said
 - a. That the history of England is the history of progress;
 - B.* And it is so,
 - b. When we take a comprehensive view of it.
2. A. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
his looks adorned the venerable place;
- B. Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
- C. And fools remained to pray
- c. Who came to scoff.

* Applying the notation already explained (p. 206, note) to compound sentences, we mark each principal clause with a different capital letter, A, B, C, &c.; the clauses subordinate to clause A are marked a; those subordinate to clause B are marked b, and so on.

SECOND METHOD.

Letter.	Connective.	SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
		Attribute.	Nom.	Verb.	Complement.	Adverbial.
1.	A.	...	We	SAID	that the history of England is the history of progress;	...
	B.	...	it	IS	so	when we take a comprehensive view of it. (<i>It.</i>)
2.	A.	His	looks	ADORNED	(the venerable) place	(1) at church (<i>pl.</i>) (2) with meek and unaffected grace; (<i>man.</i>)
	B.	from his lips	truth	PREVAILED	...	with double sway, (<i>man.</i>)
	C.	who came to scoff	fools	REMAINED	...	to pray. (<i>pur.</i>)

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

THIRD METHOD.

Letter.	Kind of Clause.	Consecutive.	SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
			Attribute.	Nominative.	Verb.	Complement.	Adverbial.
1.	Noun	that	... of England	We the history	said was	... the history (of progress);	...
		and when	... ...	it we	is take	so a (comprehensive) view (of it).	... ...
2.	Adj.		His	looks	ADORNED	the (venerable) place	(1) at church (<i>pl.</i>) (2) with meek and un- affected grace; (<i>man.</i>)
		and	from his lips	truth	PREVAILED	...	with double sway, (<i>man.</i>)
			... ...	fools who	REMAINED came	... ... ...	to pray (<i>pur.</i>) to scoff. (<i>pur.</i>)

each
 but
 not
 lan
 any
 the
 Ch
 bis
 na
 the
 his
 as
 is
 are
 ag
 th
 of
 va
 er
 er
 th
 pu
 to
 m
 so
 va

EXERCISES.

Compound Sentences for Analysis.

The general had three daughters, and he left each of them a fortune. He had many relatives, but he died without a friend. I could make nothing of it, and therefore asked in what language it was written. When Sir Roger sees any one sleeping in church, he either wakes them himself, or sends his servant to them. Charles had two brothers; the one became a bishop, and the other, who had entered the navy, was drowned in the Mediterranean. Henry the Fifth manifestly derived his courage from his piety, and was scrupulously careful not to ascribe the success of it to himself. Impudence is a vice, and absurdity a folly. The impudent are pressing, though they know they are disagreeable; the absurd are importunate, because they think they are acceptable. A long series of ancestors shows the native with great advantage at the first; but, if he any way degenerate from that, the least spot is visible on ermine. Almost every man's thoughts, while they are general, are right; and most hearts are pure while temptation is away. It is one thing to write because there is something which the mind wishes to discharge; and another thing to solicit the imagination, because ceremony or vanity requires something to be written.

Full well the busy whisper, circling round,
 Conveyed the dismal tidings when he frowned;
 Yet was he kind, or, if severe in aught,
 The love he bore to learning was in fault.

to pray (pur.)
 to scoff. (pur.)

REMAINED
 came

whom
 who

Adj.

c

The French have long been acknowledged to have much bravery: a great part of Europe has owned their superiority in this respect; and I know scarcely any country but that which has beaten them that dares assert the contrary.

Slaves cannot breathe in England: if their lungs

Receive our air, that moment they are free;

They touch our country, and their shackles fall.

The alms of the settlement in this dreadful exigency were certainly liberal, and all was done by charity that private charity could do: but it was a people in beggary; it was a nation which stretched out its hands for food.

Who steals my purse steals trash: 'tis something, nothing;

'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands;

But he that filches from me my good name,

Robs me of that which not enriches him,

And makes me poor indeed.

WI
Int

Of
WI

WI
c

WI
WI

WI
WI

Of
Na

WI
Na

*W
*W

*W
*W

*W
I

WI
WI

Ho
f

1.
I

2.
I

3.
t

4.
I

5.
f

6.
r

7.
s

*M
I

*W
I

*W
*W

*W
L

Questions for Oral and Written Examinations.

(The Questions on the *Observations* are marked with an asterisk.)

What is English Grammar?
 Into what parts is it divided?

*Mention singular nouns which
 may be used with a plural verb.

Orthography.

Of what does *orthography* treat?
 What is a *vowel*? Name the
 vowels.

What is a *consonant*? Name the
 consonants.

What is a proper *diphthong*?
 What is an *improper diphthong*?
 What is a *syllable*?

Gender.

Name the *genders*, and say what
 each denotes.

What are the different ways of
 distinguishing sex?

*What does *neuter* mean and de-
 note?

*Give examples of nouns that are
 either masculine or feminine.

*When do *neuter nouns* become
 masculine or feminine?

Etymology.

Of what does *etymology* treat?
 Name the parts of speech.

Case.

What are the *cases* of nouns?

How is the *possessive singular*
 formed?

How is the *possessive plural*
 formed?

*What does *case* denote?

*What does each case denote?

Noun.

What is a *noun*?
 Name the *kinds* of nouns.

*What are *collective nouns*?

*What are *abstract nouns*?

*What are *verbal nouns*?

*When have *proper nouns* a
 plural?

Adjective.

What is an *adjective*?

What is an *article*?

Name and distinguish the *articles*.

When is *a* used? When *an*?

*When is *a* used before *u*?

*In what sense is a noun taken,
 when no article precedes it?

*When is *a* used before nouns in
 the plural?

*How is *the* used?

Name the *degrees* of comparison.

How is the *comparative* formed?

How is the *superlative* formed?

When is final *y* changed into *i*?

*What does each *degree* express?

*How are adjectives of more than
 one syllable compared?

*Mention *superlatives* formed by
 adding *most* to the comparative.

*Give an example of a noun used
 as an adjective; and of an ad-
 jective used as a noun.

*Mention adjectives which do not
 properly admit of comparison.

*Distinguish between *much* and
many; *older* and *elder*.

Mention adjectives which are com-
 pared irregularly.

Number.

What are the *numbers* of nouns?

What does each denote?

How is the *plural* generally
 formed?

1. What nouns take *es* in the
 plural?

2. How do nouns in *y* form the
 plural?

3. How do nouns in *f* or *fe* form
 the plural?

4. What nouns take *en* in the
 plural?

5. Mention nouns that have two
 forms of the plural.

6. Mention nouns that have anom-
 alous plurals.

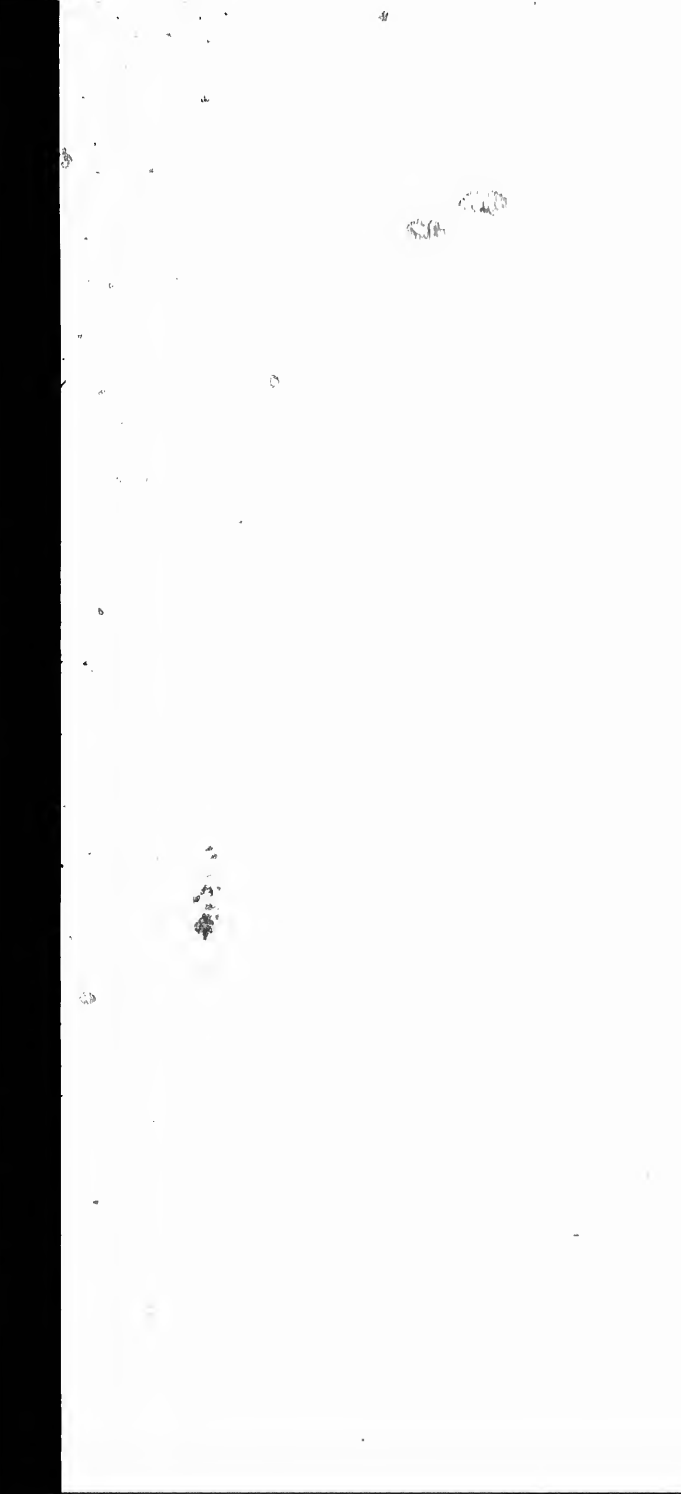
7. Mention nouns that are the
 same in both numbers.

*Mention nouns that have foreign
 plurals.

*What classes of nouns want the
 plural?

*What nouns have no singular?

*What nouns are sometimes singu-
 lar, sometimes plural?



Pronoun.

What is a *pronoun*?
Name the *kinds* of pronouns.

Personal Pronouns.

Enumerate the *personal* pronouns.
How are they distinguished?

What are the two forms of the possessive case of the personal pronouns?

- *What is the difference between *my* and *mine*, *thy* and *thine*?
- *Is the form *her*'s correct?
- *What are the *compound* personal pronouns?
- *What is *self* when used alone?
- *Which are the correct forms of the possessive case of the personal pronoun?

Relative Pronouns.

What is a *relative* pronoun?
Name the simple *relatives*, and say how each is used.

Name the *compound* relative.

- *What are *interrogatives*?
- *In what does the *relative* agree with and differ from its antecedent?
- *When may *who* be used of the inferior animals?
- *What *relatives* may be used as adjectives?
- *Mention *compound* relatives.

Adjective Pronouns.

Mention the different kinds of *adjective* pronouns, with examples.

- *Mention *demonstrative* pronouns, besides *this* and *that*.
- *Show the different uses of *that*.
- *What should the *indefinite* pronouns (except *none*) be considered?
- *What should *none* other be?

Verb.

What is a *verb*?
Name the *kinds* of verbs, and say what each expresses.

- *What are *active* verbs also called? Why?
 - *What are *neuter* verbs also called? Why?
 - *What does *neuter*, when applied to verbs, mean?
- How are verbs inflected?

What are the *numbers* of the verbs?
How many *persons* has the verb?
Name and explain the *moods*.

Tense.

What does *tense* mean?
Name the *tenses*; and say what each expresses.

What is the *participle*?

*What does the participle in *-ing* denote?

*What does the participle in *-ed* denote?

*What does the *perfect* participle denote?

What are the *auxiliary* verbs?

How should they be regarded?

*Explain the proper uses of *shall* and *will*.

How is the *progressive* form of the verb conjugated?

How, the *emphatic* form?

Irregular Verbs.

What is a *regular* verb?

What, an *irregular* verb?

What are *defective* verbs?

Adverb.

What is an *adverb*?

Name the *classes* of adverbs.

*Compare the use of *adverbs* with that of *adjectives*.

*How are *adverbs* compared?

*What are most words ending in *ly*?

*How are they usually compared?

Preposition.

What is a *preposition*?

*What *case* does every preposition require after it?

*Mention words that are sometimes *prepositions* and sometimes *adverbs*.

Conjunction.

What is a *conjunction*?

Name the *kinds* of conjunctions.

How are the *copulative* conjunctions used? Name them.

Name the *alternative* conjunctions.

Name the *adversative* conjunctions.

*When is *for* a conjunction?

*Show the various uses of *since*.

Interjection.

What is an *interjection*?

Syntax.

Of what does *syntax* treat?

*Define the two parts of syntax?

*Define *concord* and *government*.

What determines the *number* and *person* of a verb? (i.) †

What *case* does an *active verb* govern? (ii.)

When do *two or more singular nominatives* take a verb in the *plural*; when in the *singular*? (iv.)

What do *conjunctions* couple? (v.)

In what *mood* does one verb govern another? (vi.)

Name the verbs after which to is omitted before the *infinitive*? (vi.)

When is a noun put in the *possessive case*? (vii.)

When do two nouns agree in *case*? (vii.)

When is a *noun of multitude* treated as *singular*; when as *plural*? (viii.)

What *case* does the verb to *be* take after it? (ix.)

What sentences require the *subjunctive mood*? (x.)

After what *verbs* is the *past participle* used? (xiii.)

In what does a *pronoun* agree with the word for which it stands? (xiv.)

In what does a *relative* agree with its *antecedent*? (xv.)

With which of two *antecedents* does the *relative* agree? (xvi.)

With which of *two singular nominatives* separated by *or* or *nor* does the verb agree in *person*? (xvii.)

In what number do a *singular* and a *plural nominative* separated by *or* or *nor* require the verb to be? (xviii.)

What is an *improper use* of the *noun* and its *pronoun*? (xix.)

What *person* must the verb be when an *infinitive mood* or a *part of a sentence* is its *nominative*? (xx.)

What is said of *double comparatives* and *superlatives*? (xxi.)

What is said of *two negatives* in the same sentence? (xxii.)

Where should *adverbs* be placed? (xxiii.)

What use of *adverbs* and *adjectives* is improper? (xxiv.)

After what are *than* and *as* used? (xxv.)

What determines the *case* of a *pronoun* after *than* or *as*? (xxvi.)

Of what *number* are the nouns and verbs with which the *distributive pronouns* agree? (xxvii.)

To which of *two contrasted things* do *this* and *that* respectively refer? (xxviii.)

What is the correct use of *to*, *at*, and *in* before names of places? (xxx.)

*When should the *latter* of two nouns after a comparative have *no article* before it? (xxxiv.)

*When is an *ellipsis* not allowable? (xxxvi.)

*Give an example of *ambiguity*. (p. 138.)

*What is *tautology*? (p. 139.)

*When do *two or more singular nouns* coupled by *and* require a verb in the *singular*? (p. 143.)

*What does the clause introduced by *and not* form? (p. 143.)

*In what number should the verb be when its *nominatives* are qualified by *every*? (p. 144.)

*When do two nouns coupled by *with* take a *singular verb*; when a *plural*? (pp. 144, 145.)

*When should the article be repeated before each of several adjectives? (pp. 146, 147.)

*When is it proper to use *they*; when, *those*? (p. 147.)

*To what does *another* properly correspond? (p. 148.)

*What demonstratives should be used in referring to things *present* or *just mentioned*? (p. 148.)

*How should *as* be construed in *as follows*, *as appears*? (pp. 148, 150.)

*When are *means* and *amends* to be treated as *singular*; when, as *plural*? (pp. 150, 151.)

† Those numerals relate to the Rules of Syntax.

- *What is the difference between *so* and *such*? (p. 151.)
- *What is the difference between *disappointed of* and *disappointed in*? (p. 151.)
- *What is the difference between *taste of* and *taste for*? (p. 152.)
- *What is the *case absolute*? (p. 152.)
- *When may a *neuter verb* govern an *objective*? (p. 154.)

Capitals.

Give rules for the use of capital letters. (p. 155.)

Punctuation.

- What is *punctuation*? (p. 159.)
- What are the chief *points* used in writing?
- By what are the *simple members* of a compound sentence separated?
- When is the *comma* used between two words of the *same part* of speech?
- Give other rules for the use of the *comma*?
- What is the use of the *semicolon*? (p. 163.)
- Where is the *colon* used? (p. 164.)
- What are the uses of the *period*? (p. 165.)

Prosody.

- Of what does *prosody* treat? (p. 167.)
- Define *accent* and *quantity*.
- Define *emphasis* and *pause*.
- *To what does *tone* refer?
- Explain the two *kinds of verse*.
- Explain *feet* and *scanning*.
- Name and explain the *feet* in most common use.
- To what is *iambic measure* adapted?
- What is the character of *trochaic measure*?

Figures of Speech.

- What is a *figure of speech*?
- Define *personification*.
- Distinguish between *simile* and *metaphor*.
- What is an *allegory*?
- Define *hyperbole* and *irony*.
- Distinguish *metonymy* from *synecdoche*.
- What is the object of *antithesis*?

Explain *climax*.

- What does *exclamation* express?
- What is the effect of *interrogation*?
- What does *paralepsis* mean?
- Define *apostrophe*.

Analysis of Sentences

- Of what does *analysis* treat?
- What is a *sentence*?
- What is a *simple sentence*?
- What is a *compound sentence*?
- What is a *member* of a sentence?
- Distinguish between a *phrase* and a *clause*.

Simple Sentence.

- Into what two *parts* may even a simple sentence be divided?
- Define the *predicate* and the *subject*.
- Into what *parts* may the *subject* be subdivided?
- Into what *parts* may the *predicate* be subdivided?
- What is a *finite verb*?
- How are *adverbials* classified?
- What are the different *kinds of phrases*?

Complex Sentence.

- When is a sentence called *complex*?
- What are the two *kinds of clauses* which it contains?
- How may a *subordinate clause* be known?
- Mention the *kinds of subordinate clauses*.
- What is an *adjective clause*?
- By what is it generally introduced?
- What is a *noun clause*?
- By what is it generally introduced?
- What is an *adverbial clause*?
- By what is the *nature of adverbial clauses* indicated?
- Mention the different *kinds*.
- Before analyzing a *complex sentence*, what should be done?

Compound Sentence.

- What is a *compound sentence*?
- What is the relation between its *principal clauses*?
- What may any *principal clause* have attached to it?
- What is a *contracted sentence*?
- How are co-ordinate clauses connected?
- Describe the *three methods* of analyzing compound sentences.

ON.

tion express
of interrogative
is mean?

Sentences

is treat?
? sentence?
d sentence?
of a sentence?
en a phrase as

entence.

is may even
be divided?
and the subject
ay the subject
ay the predicat

rb?
e classified?
fferent kinds of

entence.

o called complex?
kinds of clauses?
s?
linate clause be
s of subordinate

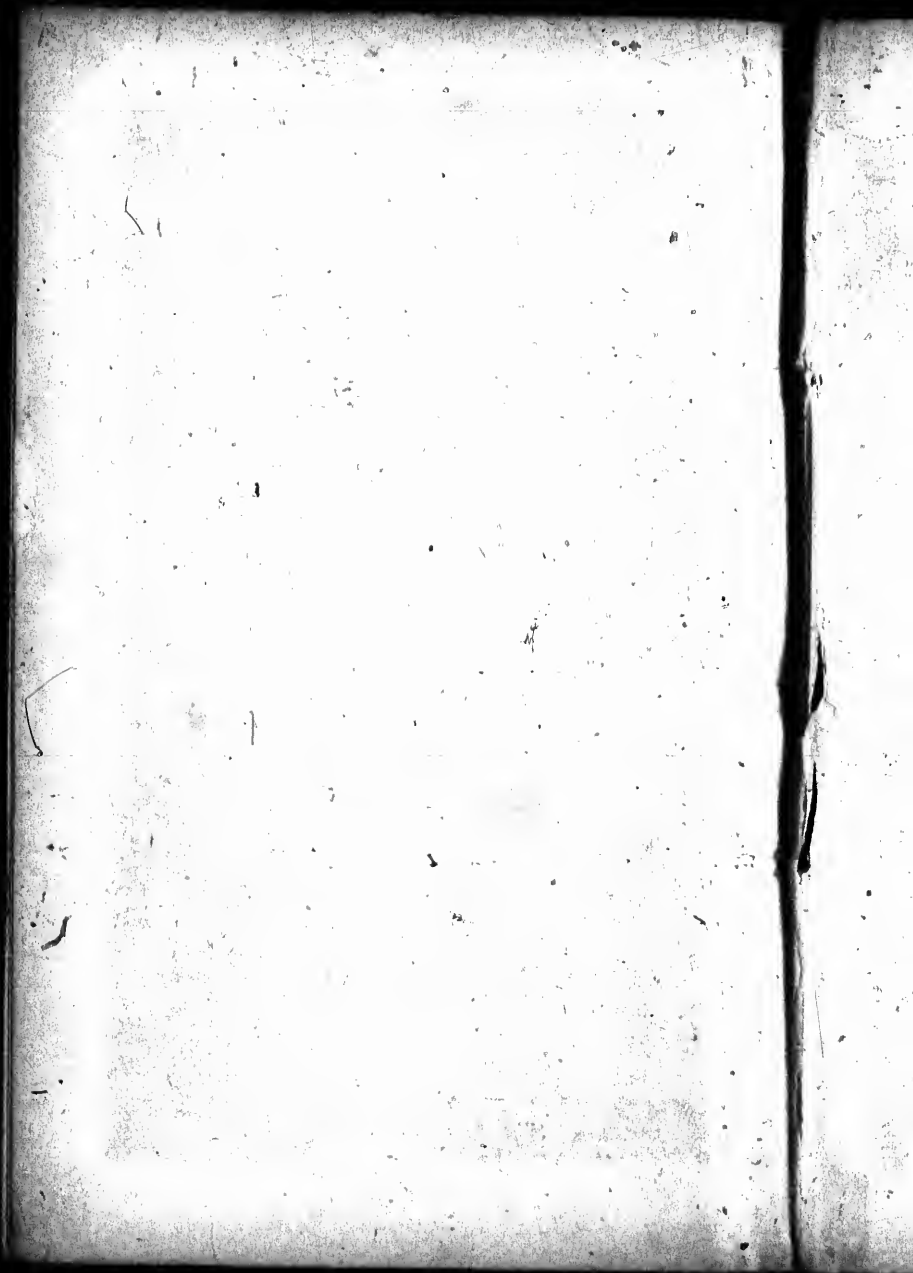
ve clause?
ally introduced?
use?
ally introduced?
tal clause?
ure of adverbial
?

ent kinds.
a complex sen-
d be done?

Sentence.

d sentence?
ion between its
? principal clause
o it?
ted sentence?
ate clauses con-

methods of an-
d sentences.





SADLIER'S
ILLUSTRATED SERIES OF
Dominion Catholic Text Books

COMPRISING

SPELLERS, READERS AND HISTORIES.

SADLIER'S Dominion First Reader, Part 1st
SADLIER'S Dominion First Reader, " 2nd
SADLIER'S Dominion Second Reader
SADLIER'S Dominion Third Reader
SADLIER'S Dominion Fourth Reader
SADLIER'S Dominion Fifth Reader
SADLIER'S Dominion Complete Speller
SADLIER'S Dominion Ancient and Modern
History

The Dominion Series of Text Books have been prepared by Catholic religious teachers of high culture and long practical experience. Acting upon the suggestion of many prominent educators who felt that the wants of our Catholic Schools and Academies in the Dominion called for more appropriate text-books, the publisher presents them to the public, confident that their merits will insure success.

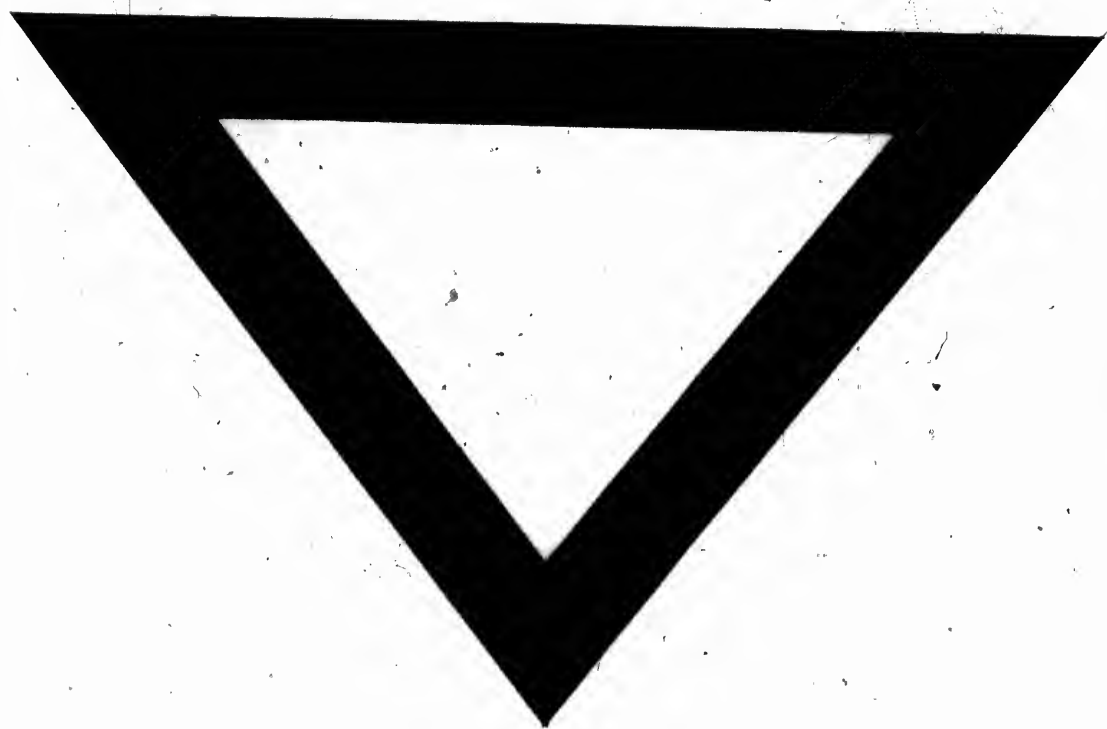
A NEW EDITION, REVISED, ENLARGED AND IMPROVED, OF

Butler's Catechism for the Provinces of Ontario & Quebec

Published with the approbation of their Graces
Archbishops Lynch and Taschereau.

FOR TERMS, PARTICULARS, ADDRESS

*** JAMES A. SADLIER ***
MONTREAL.





2014
2014
2014